МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ Донецький національний університет економіки і торгівлі ім. М.І. Туган-Барановського

Кафедра іноземної філології та перекладу

С. А. Остапенко

# МЕТОДИЧНІ РЕКОМЕНДАЦІЇ З ВИВЧЕННЯ ДИСЦИПЛІНИ

# ПРАКТИЧНИЙ КУРС ОСНОВНОЇ ІНОЗЕМНОЇ МОВИ (ПРАКТИЧНА ГРАМАТИКА)

Кривий Ріг 2018

# МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ

Донецький національний університет економіки і торгівлі ім. М.І. Туган-Барановського

Кафедра іноземної філології та перекладу

# С. А. Остапенко

# МЕТОДИЧНІ РЕКОМЕНДАЦІЇ З ВИВЧЕННЯ ДИСЦИПЛІНИ

# ПРАКТИЧНИЙ КУРС ОСНОВНОЇ ІНОЗЕМНОЇ МОВИ (ПРАКТИЧНА ГРАМАТИКА)

Ступінь: бакалавр III курс

Затверджено на засіданні кафедри іноземної філології та перекладу Протокол № 6 від "8" листопада 2018 р.

Схвалено навчально-методичною радою ДонНУЕТ Протокол № 2 від "29"листопада 2018 р.

Кривий Ріг 2018 Рецензенти: Луценко Л. О, кандидат філологічних наук, доцент Ревуцька С. К., кандидат філологічних наук, доцент

#### Остапенко, С. А.

О 76 Методичні рекомендації з вивчення дисципліни «Практичний курс основної іноземної мови (практична граматика)» [Текст] : для студ. спец. 035 «Філологія», ступінь бакалавр / М-во освіти і науки України, Донец. нац. ун-т економіки і торгівлі ім. М. Туган-Барановського, каф. іноземної філології та перекладу; С. А. Остапенко. – Кривий Ріг : [ДонНУЕТ], 2018. – 143 с.

Методична розробка містить комплекс вправ, які орієнтовані на розпізнання граматичних явищ англійської мови, що включають труднощі перекладу, та навички перекладати речення з даними труднощами.

Наповнення та структурний план методичних рекомендацій викликає велику зацікавленість, пов'язану з актуальністю запропонованих та розроблених тем. ставить метою комплексний розвиток вмінь та навичок студентів, пов'язаних з практичним використанням мови у повсякденному житті та фаховій діяльності.

Запропонована структура методичних рекомендацій орієнтована на найсучаснішу практику викладання іноземної мови та безпосередньо на адресата – студентів.

Методичні рекомендації відповідають сучасним методичним вимогам до навчальної літератури.

#### ББК ББК 81.432.1-7

© Остапенко С. А., 2018 © Донецький національний університет економіки і торгівлі ім. М. Туган-Барановського, 2018

## **3MICT / CONTENTS**

BCTYII / INTRODUCTION	5
ЧАСТИНА 1. ЗАГАЛЬНІ РЕКОМЕНДАЦІЇ ЩОДО ВИВЧЕННЯ ДИСЦИПЛІНИ / GENERAL STUDY GUIDE	6
<b>ЧАСТИНА 2. ЗМІСТ ПРАКТИЧНИХ ЗАНЯТЬ / PRACTICAL</b> <b>TRAINING SUBJECT MATTER</b> UNIT 1. MODAL VERBS UNIT 2. MOOD UNIT 3. PHRASAL VERBS UNIT 4. PREPOSITIONS	21 22 41 61 78
<ul> <li><b>ЧАСТИНА 3. МЕТОДИЧНІ РЕКОМЕНДАЦІЇ 3 ОРГАНІЗАЦІЇ</b> <b>САМОСТІЙНОЇ РОБОТИ СТУДЕНТІВ / STUDENTS' SELF-</b> <b>DIRECTED ACTIVITY ORGANIZATION GUIDE</b></li> <li>1. Modal auxiliaries and related verbs, 'I wish'</li> <li>1.1 The two uses of modal verbs.</li> <li>1.2 Uses of modals to express ability and inability.</li> <li>1.3 Uses of modals to express permission and prohibition.</li> <li>1.4 Uses of modals to express certainty and possibility.</li> <li>1.5 Uses of modals to express deduction.</li> <li>1.6 Uses of modals to express deduction.</li> <li>1.6 Uses of modals to express deduction.</li> <li>1.7 Expressing wishes, etc.: 'I wish,' 'if only', 'it's (high) time.</li> <li>1.8 Expressing preferences: 'would rather' and 'would sooner'.</li> <li>1.9 'It's advisable' / 'it's necessary'.</li> <li>1.10 'It isn't advisable' / 'It isn't necessary' / 'It's forbidden'.</li> <li>1.11 Modals to express habit: 'used to', 'will' and 'would'.</li> <li>1.12 'Need' and 'dare' as modals and as full verbs.</li> <li>1.13 'Would / wouldn't'; 'that should'; 'there' + modal.</li> <li>2. Prepositions and adverb particles</li> <li>2.1 Prepositions, adverb particles and conjunctions.</li> <li>2.2 Preposition of movement and position; prepositions of time.</li> <li>2.3 Adverbial phrases of duration.</li> <li>2.4 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (1).</li> <li>2.5 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (2).</li> <li>2.6 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (3).</li> <li>3. Phrasal verbs</li> </ul>	$112 \\ 113 \\ 113 \\ 115 \\ 117 \\ 120 \\ 122 \\ 125 \\ 128 \\ 130 \\ 132 \\ 135 \\ 137 \\ 140 \\ 142 \\ 146 \\ 148 \\ 150 \\ 153 \\ 155 \\ 158 \\ 161 \\ 141 \\ 150 \\ 153 \\ 155 \\ 158 \\ 161 \\ 151 $
<ul> <li>3.1 Phrasal verbs: Type 1, verb + preposition (transitive).</li> <li>3.2 Phrasal verbs: Type 2, verb + particle (transitive).</li> <li>3.3 Phrasal verbs: Type 3, verb + particle (intransitive) Type 4, verb + particle + preposition (transitive)</li> </ul>	161 163 166 167

# **СПИСОК ВИКОРИСТАНОЇ ЛІТЕРАТУРИ / REFERENCES** 169

Загальновідомо, що повнота, точність і правильність перекладу науковотехнічних та економічних текстів значною мірою залежить від того, наскільки правильно перекладач визначає і розуміє граматичні форми, синтаксичні конструкції та структуру речення.

Головна мета дисципліни "Практичний курс основної іноземної мови: практична граматика" – навчити студентів розпізнавати граматичні явища англійської мови, що включають труднощі перекладу, та адекватно перекладати речення з даними труднощами.

В результаті вивчення предмета студент повинен знати:

- основні граматичні явища;

– форми вираження граматичного значення, їх еквіваленти, моделі вживання;

- функціонально-семантичні категорії;

– діапазон граматичних засобів писемного відтворення думок.

та вміти:

– знаходити форми вираження граматичного значення, їх еквіваленти, моделі вживання і вміти аналізувати граматичні явища з точки зору семантики тих категорій, що ними передаються;

– виразити за допомогою різноманітних граматичних засобів функціональносемантичні категорії;

– оперувати діапазоном граматичних засобів писемного відтворення думок, ведення кореспонденції, переклад науково-технічної літератури, складення оглядів, тощо;

 вільно і правильно спілкуватись іноземною мовою (з дотриманням граматичних норм) в різних ситуаціях, головним чином, в ситуаціях професійного спілкування;

 – робити лінгвостилістичний та перекладознавчий аналіз наукових, газетних і художніх текстів з урахуванням граматичних норм англійської та української мов; викладати інформацію в різних видах письмових робіт, використовуючи набуті знання з практичної граматики.

Методичні рекомендації укладено у відповідності з програмою з дисципліни «Практичний курс основної іноземної мови» для студентів філологічних спеціальностей університетів і призначено для студентів III курсу спеціальності 035 «Філологія», ступінь бакалавр, які вивчають курс як основну дисципліну.

# ЧАСТИНА 1. ЗАГАЛЬНІ РЕКОМЕНДАЦІЇ ЩОДО ВИВЧЕННЯ ДИСЦИПЛІНИ

# PART 1. GENERAL STUDY GUIDE

#### 1. Опис дисципліни

Найменування показників	Характеристика дисципліни
Обов'язкова (для студентів спеціальності "назва спеціальності") / вибіркова дисципліна	Обов'язкова для студентів спеціальності 035 «Філологія»
Семестр (осінній / весняний)	осінній, весняний
Кількість кредитів	12
Загальна кількість годин	360
Кількість модулів	4
Лекції, годин	-
Практичні / семінарські, годин	180
Лабораторні, годин	-
Самостійна робота, годин	180
Тижневих годин для денної форми	
навчання:	
аудиторних	5
самостійної роботи студента	5
Вид контролю	залік, екзамен

#### 2. Програма дисципліни

Ціль – формування комунікативної лінгвістичної соціокультурної та професійної компетенції студентів шляхом їх залучення до виконання професійно-орієнтованих завдань, формування вмінь і навичок усного та писемного мовлення з послідовним удосконаленням кожного окремого виду мовленнєвої діяльності.

Практична мета – оволодіння необхідним лексичним та граматичним матеріалом, передбаченим відповідною програмою з практичного курсу англійської мови з метою використання отриманих знань у подальшій професійній діяльності.

Розвиваюча передбачає подальший комунікативних мета розвиток пам'яті: слухової, зорової, оперативної здібностей студента, його та довготривалої; уваги, логічного мислення, вольових якостей, пов'язаних з досягненням прогресу в навчальній діяльності.

Загальноосвітня мета передбачає збагачення духовного світу особистості, розширенню знань про країни, мова яких вивчається, а саме географічне положення, суспільно-політичний устрій та культуру, традиції, міста тощо.

Виховна мета передбачає виховання у студентів поваги до культури інших народів, їхніх традицій і звичаїв, активності, працьовитості, здатності до прийняття самостійних рішень, колективізму тощо.

#### Завдання:

методичні: організація процесу навчання англійської мови з урахуванням діалогу

культур, інтегрованого підходу, інтерактивних методів особистіснозорієнтованого навчання. Використання таких методів, як диспути, конференції, круглі столи, рольові ігри, мозкові штурми тощо;

пізнавальні: розвиток країнознавчих знань студентів про культуру, традиції та звичаї Великої Британії та США порівняно з національними традиціями та культурою свого народу;

практичні: удосконалення вмінь студентів сприймати іноземну мову на слух, читати та спілкуватися за змістом прочитаних текстів різної тематики, висловлення власної думки у монологічному діалогічному усному та писемному мовленні, а також розвиток їхньої мовної здогадки вміння самоконтролю

Предмет: іноземна (англійська) мова.

## Зміст дисципліни розкривається в темах:

Лексичний матеріал:

Тема 1. Види правопорушень.

Тема 2. Свята та звичаї різних країн.

Тема 3. Їжа (назви страв, приготування їжі, правильний режим харчування, особливості національних кухонь).

Тема 4. Заклади громадського харчування.

Тема 5. Здоровий спосіб життя, спорт.

Тема 6. Проблема охорони навколишнього середовища.

Тема 7. Генетика.

Тема 8. Система освіти в Україна та за кордоном.

Тема 9. Відпочинок. (розваги, музика, театр).

Тема 10. Мистецтво кіно в житті суспільства.

Тема 11. Місто, транспорт (назви різних транспортних засобів, правила користування ними)

Тема 12. Л. М. Монтгомері «Анна з Грін Гейзбл».

Тема 13. Домашнє читання (за вибором студента)

Граматичний матеріал:

Тема 1. Модальні дієслова та їх еквіваленти

Тема 2. Види способу в англійській мові.

Тема 3. Фразові дієслова

Тема 4. Прийменники

# 3. Структура дисципліни

		Ki	лькість год	ИН	
Назви змістових модулів і тем		У тому числі			
	усього	Л	п/с	лаб	срс
1	2	3	4	5	6
Модуль 1					
Змістовий модуль 1: Система влади в Україні та англомовних країнах					
Тема 1. Види правопорушень	20		12		8

	1		
Тема 2. Л. М. Монтгомері «Анна з Грін Гейзбл» (VI)	14	8	6
Тема 3. Домашнє читання (за вибором студента)	8		8
Разом за змістовим модулем 1	42	20	22
		а серед країн світу	
Тема 4. Свята та звичаї різних країн	22	14	8
Тема 5. Їжа (назви страв,			
приготування їжі, правильний режим харчування, особливості національних кухонь)	14	8	6
Тема 6. Заклади громадського харчування.	9		9
Тема 7. Здоровий спосіб життя, спорт.	24	16	8
Тема 8. Л. М. Монтгомері «Анна з	14		
Грін Гейзбл» (VII – VIII)	14	8	6
Тема 9. Домашнє читання (за вибором	10		10
студента)	10		10
Разом за змістовим модулем 2	93	46	47
	Модуль 2		
Змістовий модуль 3: М	Лодальні діє	слова та їх еквіваленти	
Тема 10. Модальні дієслова	18	8	10
Тема 11. Модальні дієслова зі			
складеними інфінітивами та	27	16	11
інфінітивно-модальні конструкції			
Разом за змістовим модулем 3	45	24	21
	Модуль 3		
	њ 4: Україна	а серед країн світу	
Тема 12. Л. М. Монтгомері «Анна з	10	6	4
Грін Гейзбл» (IX) Тема 13. Домашнє читання (за			
Тема 13. Домашнє читання (за вибором студента)	8		8
Тема 14. Проблема охорони			
навколишнього середовища	14	8	6
Тема 15. Генетика	8		8
Тема 16. Система освіти в Україна та	_		
за кордоном	24	16	8
Тема 17. Відпочинок. (розваги,	16	10	
музика, театр)	16	10	6
Тема 18. Мистецтво кіно в житті	8		8
суспільства	0		0
Разом за змістовим модулем 4	88	40	48
Змістовий модул	<mark>ь 5: Життя</mark> л	юдей за кордоном	
Тема 19. Місто, транспорт (назви різних транспортних засобів, правила користування ними)	14	8	6
Тема 20. Л. М. Монтгомері «Анна з Грін Гейзбл» (Х)	10	6	4
Тема 21. Домашнє читання (за вибором студента)	8		8
Разом за змістовим модулем 5	32	14	18
Разом за змісторим молупем 5	32	14	18

	Модуль 4		
Змістовий модуль 6:	Види способу	в англійській мові	
Тема 22. Вживання Suppositional способу	12	8	4
Тема 23. Вживання Subjunctive I і II	12	8	4
Тема 24. Умовний спосіб після 'I wish'	12	8	4
Разом за змістовим модулем 6	36	24	12
Змістовий н	модуль 7: При	йменники	
Тема 25. Фразові дієслова	8	4	4
Тема 26. Прийменники часу, місця, руху	8	4	4
Тема 27. Нестандартні прийменники	8	4	4
Разом за змістовим модулем 7	24	12	12
Усього годин	360	180	180

# 4. Теми семінарських/практичних/лабораторних занять

№ 3/П	Вид та тема заняття	Кількість годин
	Практичне заняття	
1	Злочин.	12
2	Практичне заняття	2
2	Модальне дієслово сап та його еквівалент.	2
3	Практичне заняття	2
	Модальне дієслово тау та його еквівалент.	2
4	Практичне заняття	4
	Домашнє читання.	
5	Практичне заняття	2
	Модальні дієслова must, have to, be to.	
6	Практичне заняття	2
	Фестивалі.	_
7	Практичне заняття	2
	Національтні костюми.	
8	Практичне заняття	2
	Модальні дієслова should, need.	
9	Практичне заняття	2
	Святкування.	
10	Практичне заняття	2
	Свята і фестивалі.	
11	Практичне заняття Незвичайні святкування.	2
	Практичне заняття	
12	Модальне дієслово can зі складеними інфінітивами.	4
	Практичне заняття	
13	Незабутні моменти.	2
	Практичне заняття	
14	Святкування Нового року.	2
4-	Практичне заняття	-
15	Модальне дієслово тау зі складеними інфінітивами.	2
10	Практичне заняття	4
16	Домашнє читання.	4

17	Практичне заняття	2
	Звички щодо харчування.	_
18	Практичне заняття Їсти чи ні.	2
	Практичне заняття	
19	Модальне дієслово must зі складеними інфінітивами.	2
	Практичне заняття	
20	Приготування їжі.	2
- 21	Практичне заняття	2
21	Відвідування закладів громадського харчування.	2
22	Практичне заняття	4
	Спорт.	•
23	Практичне заняття	2
	Модальне дієслово should зі складеними інфінітивами.	
24	Практичне заняття	4
	Спортивні ігри.	
25	Практичне заняття Важливість спорту в нашому житті.	2
	Практичне заняття	
26	Модальне дієслово need зі складеними інфінітивами.	2
	Практичне заняття	
27	Спорт задля змагання.	2
	Практичне заняття	
28	Неприємний бік спорту.	2
	Практичне заняття	
29	Інфінітивно-модальні конструкції.	4
20	Практичне заняття	2
30	Екстремальний спорт.	2
31	Практичне заняття	8
51	Домашнє читання.	0
32	Практичне заняття	2
	Жорстокі часи для тварин.	
33	Практичне заняття	2
	Тваринний світ.	
34	Практичне заняття Переробка речей.	2
	Практичне заняття	
35	Вдивання Suppositional способу.	8
26	Практичне заняття	2
36	Навколишнє середовище.	2
37	Практичне заняття	4
57	Домашнє читання.	4
38	Практичне заняття	2
	Освіта.	
39	Практичне заняття	4
	Комп'ютерізація освіти.	
40	Практичне заняття Вживання Subjunctive I i II.	8
	Бживання Subjunctive 1111. Практичне заняття	
41	Технологія навчання.	2
L		

42	Практичне заняття Школа та шкільне життя.	2
43	Практичне заняття	2
	Навчання у пансіонах та вдома.	
44	Практичне заняття	2
	Екзамени.	
45	Практичне заняття	2
	Освіта та навчання.	
46	Практичне заняття	8
	Умовний спосіб після 'I wish'.	Ŭ
47	Практичне заняття	2
	Домашнє читання.	2
48	Практичне заняття	2
+0	Розваги.	2
49	Практичне заняття	2
49	Світ кіно.	2
50	Практичне заняття	4
50	Фразові дієслова.	4
51	Практичне заняття	2
51	Балет.	Z
50	Практичне заняття	2
52	Відпочинок на лоні природи.	2
50	Практичне заняття	2
53	Відвідування концерту.	2
<i>C</i> 4	Практичне заняття	4
54	Прийменники часу, місця, руху.	4
	Практичне заняття	
55	Транспорт.	6
	Практичне заняття	2
56	Транспорт минулого.	2
	Практичне заняття	
57	Нестандартні прийменники.	4
	Практичне заняття	6
58	58 Доиашне читання.	
Всьог		180

#### 5. Індивідуальні завдання

- 1. Огляд періодичної та монографічної наукової літератури.
- 2. Підготовка рефератів, доповідей за обраною темою.
- 3. Проектна робота.

4. Підготовка тез доповідей з метою виступу на університетських, всеукраїнських та міжнародних семінарах та конференціях.

5. Аналіз і переклад текстів.

#### 6. Обсяги, зміст та засоби діагностики самостійної роботи

Тема	Кількість годин самостій-	Зміст самостійної роботи	Засоби діагностики
	ної		
	роботи		

		Модуль 1				
Зміс	Змістовий модуль 1. Система влади в Україні та англомовних країнах					
Види правопору- шень	8	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 1.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Написання словникового диктанту.</li> </ol>			
Л. М. Монтгомері «Анна з Грін Гейзбл» (VI)	6	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань для домашнього читання.</li> <li>Підготовка до монологічного та діалогічного мовлення.</li> <li>Аналіз прочитанного тексту.</li> <li>Засвоєння лексичних одиниць.</li> <li>Написання ессе.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Монологічне мовлення.</li> <li>Участь у дискусії.</li> </ol>			
Домашнє читання (за вибором студента)	8	<ol> <li>Читання, переклад та переказ прочитаного тексту.</li> <li>Засвоєння лексичних одиниць.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Монологічне мовлення.</li> <li>Аналіз тексту.</li> </ol>			
Разом змістовий модуль 1	22					
	Зміс	товий модуль 2. Україна серед країн світ	гу			
Свята та звичаї різних країн	8	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 2.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> <li>Підготовка індивідуального завдання.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Презентація проектів.</li> </ol>			
Їжа (назви страв, приготування їжі, правильний режим харчування, особливості національних кухонь)	6	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 3.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> <li>Підготовка індивідуального завдання.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Презентація проектів</li> </ol>			
Заклади громадського харчування.	9	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 4.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Написання словникового диктанту.</li> </ol>			

Здоровий спосіб життя, спорт	8	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 5.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Написання словникового диктанту.</li> </ol>
Л. М. Монтгомері «Анна з Грін Гейзбл» (VII – VIII)	6	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань для домашнього читання.</li> <li>Підготовка до монологічного та діалогічного мовлення.</li> <li>Аналіз прочитанного тексту.</li> <li>Засвоєння лексичних одиниць.</li> <li>Написання ессе</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Монологічне мовлення.</li> <li>Участь у дискусії.</li> </ol>
Домашнє читання (за вибором студента)	10	<ol> <li>Читання, переклад та переказ прочитаного тексту.</li> <li>Засвоєння лексичних одиниць.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Монологічне мовлення.</li> <li>Аналіз тексту.</li> </ol>
Разом змістовий модуль 2	47		
		Модуль 2	
	Змістовиі	й модуль 3. Модальні дієслова та їх еквів	аленти
		1. Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 1.	
Модальні дієслова	10	<ol> <li>2. Вивчення граматичних конструкцій, передбачених темою.</li> <li>3. Робота зі словниками, граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>4. Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних та тестових завдань.</li> </ol>
Модальні дієслова зі складеними інфінітивами та інфінітивно- модальні конструкції	11	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 2.</li> <li>Вивчення граматичних конструкцій, передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками, граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних та тестових завдань.</li> </ol>
Разом змістовий модуль З	21		
		Модуль 3	
	Зміс	товий модуль 4. Україна серед країн світ	гу
Л. М. Монтгомері «Анна з Грін Гейзбл» (IX)	4	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань для домашнього читання.</li> <li>Підготовка до монологічного та діалогічного мовлення.</li> <li>Аналіз прочитанного тексту.</li> <li>Засвоєння лексичних одиниць.</li> <li>Написання ессе</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Монологічне мовлення.</li> <li>Участь у дискусії.</li> </ol>

Домашнє читання (за вибором студента)	8	<ol> <li>Читання, переклад та переказ прочитаного тексту.</li> <li>Засвоєння лексичних одиниць.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Монологічне мовлення.</li> <li>Аналіз тексту.</li> </ol>
Проблема охорони навколишньо- го середовища	6	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 6.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Написання словникового диктанту.</li> </ol>
Генетика	8	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 7.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Написання словникового диктанту.</li> </ol>
Система освіти в Україна та за кордоном	8	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 8.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Написання словникового диктанту.</li> </ol>
Відпочинок. (розваги, музика, театр)	6	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 9.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Написання словникового диктанту.</li> </ol>
Мистецтво кіно в житті суспільства	8	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 10.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> <li>Виконання індивідуального завдання.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Захист проектів.</li> </ol>
Разом змістовий	48		
модуль 4	n	ровий молини <b>Б.</b> Малта жалой за на	
Miaza	5MIC	говий модуль 5: Життя людей за кордоно	JM
Місто, транспорт (назви різних транспортних засобів, правила користування	6	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 11.</li> <li>Вивчення лексичних одиниць передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Читання та переклад текстів.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних тестових завдань.</li> <li>Захист проектів.</li> </ol>

ними)		6. Виконання індивідуального завдання.	
Л. М. Монтгомері «Анна з Грін Гейзбл» (Х)	4	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань для домашнього читання.</li> <li>Підготовка до монологічного та діалогічного мовлення.</li> <li>Аналіз прочитанного тексту.</li> <li>Засвоєння лексичних одиниць.</li> <li>Написання ессе</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Монологічне мовлення.</li> <li>Участь у дискусії.</li> </ol>
Домашнє читання (за вибором студента)	8	<ol> <li>Читання, переклад та переказ прочитаного тексту.</li> <li>Засвоєння лексичних одиниць.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Монологічне мовлення.</li> <li>Аналіз тексту.</li> </ol>
Разом змістовий модуль 5	18		
		Модуль 4	
	Змістов	зий модуль 6: Види способу в англійській	мові
Вживання Suppositional способу	4	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 3.</li> <li>Вивчення граматичних конструкцій, передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками, граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних та тестових завдань.</li> </ol>
Вживання Subjunctive I i II	4	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 4.</li> <li>Вивчення граматичних конструкцій, передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками, граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних та тестових завдань.</li> </ol>
Умовний спосіб після 'I wish'	4	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 5.</li> <li>Вивчення граматичних конструкцій, передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками, граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних та тестових завдань.</li> </ol>
Разом змістовий модуль б	12		
		Змістовий модуль 7: Прийменники	
Фразові дієслова	4	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 6.</li> <li>Вивчення граматичних конструкцій, передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками, граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних та тестових завдань.</li> </ol>
Прийменники часу, місця, руху	4	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 7.</li> <li>Вивчення граматичних конструкцій, передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками, граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних та тестових завдань.</li> </ol>

Нестандартні прийменники	4	<ol> <li>Виконання завдань та вправ Unit 8.</li> <li>Вивчення граматичних конструкцій, передбачених темою.</li> <li>Робота зі словниками, граматичними довідниками, інтернет ресурсами.</li> <li>Самотестування.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Фронтальне та індивідуальне опитування.</li> <li>Виконання поточних та тестових завдань.</li> </ol>
Разом змістовий модуль 7	12		
Всього	180		

#### 7. Результати навчання

1	Знання лексичних одиниць та граматичних конструкцій тем, передбачених	
1	програмою.	
2	Вміння читати та перекладати тексти на задану тему.	
3	Володіння лексичним запасом, необхідним для висловлення власних думок	
5	та розуміння іншомовної мови в межах заданої теми.	
4	Вміння робити презентації англійською мовою.	
5	Вміння вести професійний діалог з колегами.	
6	Знання найбільш відомих зразків мовленнєвої поведінки. Навички писемного мовлення.	
7		

#### 8. Форми навчання

Практичні заняття, самостійна робота (підготовка презентацій, рефератів, самостійне опрацювання додаткових питань за наведеним переліком літератури).

#### 9. Методи оцінювання

Залік, екзамен.

#### 10. Розподіл балів, які отримують студенти

Відповідно до системи оцінювання знань студентів ДонНУЕТ рівень сформованості компетентностей студента оцінюється у випадку проведення екзамену: впродовж семестру (50 балів) та при проведені підсумкового контролю – екзамену (50 балів).

№ теми		Вид роботи/бали				
практичного заняття	Тестові завдання	Комунікатив- ні завдання	Виконання практичних	Індиві- дуальне	ПМК	Сума балів
		Модул	завдань ть 1	завдання		
Змістовий модуль 1						
Тема 1	2		4			6

#### Оцінювання протягом семестру

Тема 2		2	4	2		8
Тема 3		2				2
Разом змістовий	-		-			
модуль 1	2	4	8	2		16
		Змістовий	модуль 2			
Тема 4	2	2	6	2		12
Тема 5	2	2	6	2		12
Тема б	2	2	6			10
Тема 7	2	2	6			10
Тема 8		2	4	2		8
Тема 9		2				2
Разом змістовий	0		20		10	
модуль 2	8	12	28	6	10	64
, ,,		Моду.	ль 2			
		Змістовий				
Тема 10	4		9			13
Тема 11	4		9			13
Разом змістовий					10	
модуль 3	8		18		10	36
Разом						100
		Моду.	ль 3			
		Змістовий				
Тема 12	1	1	1	1		4
Тема 13		1				1
Тема 14	1		2			3
Тема 15			2			
Тема 16	1		2			2 3
Тема 17	1		2			3
Тема 18	1		2			3
Разом змістовий						
модуль 4	5	2	11	1		19
	I	Змістовий	молуль 5	1		
Тема 19	1		2	2		5
Тема 20	_	1	1	1		3
Тема 21		1	_	_		1
Разом змістовий			-	-		
модуль 5	1	2	3	3	4	13
		Моду.	ль 4			
		Змістовий				
Тема 22	1		2			3
Тема 23	1		2			3
Тема 24	1		1			2
Разом змістовий						
модуль б	3		5			8
- UN -		Змістовий	модуль 7	ı	1	
Тема 25	1		1			2
Тема 26	1		1			2
Тема 27	1		1			2
Разом змістовий	_		_			
модуль 7	3		3		4	10
Разом			1			50

# Оцінювання студентів при проведенні екзамену з використанням комп'ютерної програми «MyTestXPro»

Оцінка на підсумковому контролі складається з оцінки за тестування (0-50 балів). Тест складається із 50 тестових питань. Оцінювання тестових завдань (50 тестових завдань по 1 балу) проводиться на основі інформації, яку надає комп'ютер за результатами тестування (кількість правильних відповідей). Правильна відповідь на одне тестове завдання оцінюється в один бал. Набрані бали за правильні відповіді сумуються.

#### Загальне оцінювання результатів вивчення дисципліни

Для виставлення підсумкової оцінки визначається сума балів, отриманих за результатами екзамену та за результатами складання змістових модулів. Оцінювання здійснюється за допомогою шкали оцінювання загальних результатів вивчення дисципліни (модулю).

	Оцінка	
100-бальна шкала	Шкала ЕСТЅ	Національна шкала
90-100	A	5, «відмінно»
80-89	В	1 (1705 20)
75-79	С	4, «добре»
70-74	D	
60-69	E	3, «задовільно»
35-59	FX	
0-34	F	2, «незадовільно»

#### 11. Методичне забезпечення

- 1. Методичні вказівки з вивчення дисципліни.
- 2. Тестові завдання для перевірки знань студентів.
- 3. Навчальна та наукова література, нормативні документи.

#### 12. Рекомендована література

#### Базова

1. Англійська мова. III курс: підручн. для студ. та виклад. вищ. навч. заклад. / М. О. Возна, А. Б. Гапонів, О. О. Акулова; за ред.. В. І. Карабана. – Вінниця : Нова Книга, 2012. – 568 с.

2. Моем С. Вибрані оповідання. Навчальний посібник. – Вінниця : Теза, 2010. – 181 с.

3. Монтгомері Л. М. Анна з Грін Гейблз: книга для читання англійською мовою. – Вінниця : Нова книга, 2008. – 440 с.

4. Остапенко С. А. Методичні вказівки з вивчення дисципліни «Практичний курс основної іноземної мови» / С. А. Остапенко. – Кривий Ріг : ДонНУЕТ, 2018.

5. Черноватий Л. М., Калабан В. І. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами. Посібник для студентів вищих закладів освіти. – Вінниця : Нова книга, 2006.

6. L. Alexander. Longman English Grammar Practice. Longman, 2002.

# Допоміжна

7. Доценко I. В. Вибрані твори англійських та американських письменників. Посібник для викладачів та студентів вузів / І. В. Доценко. – Вінниця : Нова книга, 2004.

8. Меркулова Е. М. Английский для студентов университетов: чтение, письменная и устная практика / Е. М. Меркулова. – М. : Союз, 2000. – 382 с.

9. Тучина Н. В., Меркулова Т. К. Read and Speak English with Pleasure / Н. В. Тучина, Т. К. Меркулова. – Х. : Торсінг, 2004.

10. Тучина Н. В., Меркулова Т. К. Speak English with Pleasure / Н. В. Тучина, Т. К. Меркулова. – Х. : Торсінг, 2001.

11. V. Evans, J. Dooley. Enterprise SB, Express Publishing, 2010.

12. V. Evans, J. Dooley. Enterprise WB, Express Publishing, 2010.

13. V. Evans. Grammarway, Express Publishing, 2010.

14. V. Evans. Round up. English Grammar Practice, Longman, 2000.

15. V. Evans, J. Dooley. Reading & Writing, Express Publishing, 2006.

16. R. Murphy. Essential Grammar in Use, Oxford University Press, 1984.

17. S. Redman. English Vocabulary in Use, Cambridge University Press, 2009.

18. S. Redman. Test Your English Vocabulary in Use, Cambridge University Press, 2009.

# Інформаційні ресурси

19. Електронний словник. – Режим доступу: http://multitran.ru.

# ЧАСТИНА 2. ЗМІСТ ПРАКТИЧНИХ ЗАНЯТЬ

# PART 2. PRACTICAL TRAINING SUBJECT MATTER

## UNIT 1

#### **MODAL VERBS**

- 1. Fill in the gaps with mustn't or needn't / don't have to.
- 1 A: Shall I help you with your shopping?
- B: No, you ... needn't/don't have to. I can manage by myself.
- 2. A: You ..... play football inside the house.B: I'm sorry. I'll go outside.
- 3. A: Do you want anything from the supermarket?B: No, you ...... get me anything today, thank you. I'm going out myself later.
- 4 A: You .... be late for work tomorrow morning.B: I know. I'll try to arrive early.
- A: You ...... take these books out of the library.
   B: I know. It's forbidden.

# 2. Rephrase the following sentences using must, mustn't, needn't, has to or doesn't have to.

- 1 **You aren't allowed to** park your car in the college car park. <u>You mustn't park your car in the college car park.</u>
- 2 I strongly advise you to speak to your parents about your decision
- 3 It isn't necessary for Emma to attend tomorrow's staff meeting
- 4 Jack is obliged to wear a suit and a tie at work because the manager says so

5 **l'm sure** Antonio is from Milan

6 It's necessary for Roger to find a job soon.

- 7 It's forbidden to use mobile phones inside the hospital.
- 8. Susan is obliged to work overtime because her boss says so

#### 3. Rephrase the following sentences using didn't need to or needn't have done.

- 1. It wasn't necessary for him to wash It wasn't dirty. <u>He didn't need to wash the car.</u>
- 2 It wasn't necessary for her to buy so many oranges, but she did.

3 It wasn't necessary for us to take an umbrella. It wasn't raining.

4 It wasn't necessary for us to turn on the light. It wasn't dark.

5 It wasn't necessary for him to call me today, but he did.

6 It wasn't necessary for you to make sandwiches to me, but you did.

7 It wasn't necessary for them to make reservations at the restaurant, but they did.

#### 4. Rewrite the sentences using the word in bold.

It isn't necessary for Mark to buy new clothes for the l reception.
 *med* <u>Mark doesn't need to/needn't buy new clothes for the reception.</u>
 You aren't allowed to pick these flowers.
 *must*

3 Sarah is obliged to type her compositions at university. *has* 

4 It wasn't necessary for Paula to make the beds, *need* 

5 It is your duty to obey the law. *must* 

6 It wasn't necessary for Bob to wait for me, but he did. *need* 

7 It is forbidden to throw litter on the beach. *must* 

8. I'm sure Ronald is at home. *must* 

9. It wasn't necessary for Alice to bake a cake for the party. *need* 

10 It wasn't necessary for George to stay at work late last night, but he did. *have* 

5. Fill in the gaps with an appropriate modal verb. Then, say what they express in each sentence.

1. A: <u>May/Can/Could</u> I borrow your pen, please? (The speaker is asking for permission)

B: No, you ..... I'm using it.

2 A: I'm bored. What shall we do?

B: We
A: No, we because it's raining.
<ul><li>B: Let's watch a video, then.</li><li>3. A: My parents told me I go to the party tonight.</li></ul>
B: Never mind, I go either. We stay at home together, though.
4 A: Sir I speak to you for a moment please?
B: Certainly, but later today; I'm busy now.
5 A: Excuse me? B: Yes?
A:you tell me where the post office is, please?
B: Certainly. It's on the main road, next to the school.
6 A: Is anyone sitting on that chair?
B: No, you take it if you want to.
6. Choose the correct answer.
1. 'Todd was a very talented child'
'I know. He play the piano well when he was seven.'
A couldn't B could C can
2. 'I've just taken a loaf out of the oven.'
'Oh, that's way I smell fresh bread when I came home.'
A was able to B can't C could
3. 'How was the test?'
'Easy. All the children pass it.'
A were able toB couldC can't4. 'What are you doing this summer?'C
'I hope I'll go on holiday with my friend.'
A could B be able to C can
7. Rewrite the sentences using the words in bold.
1 Do you mind if I leave the door open for a while?
<i>can</i> <u>Can I leave the door open for a while?</u>
2 You're obliged to take notes during the lecture,
have
3 I'm sorry, but you aren't allowed to enter this room,
<i>must</i>
<i>able</i>
5 It wasn't necessary for Ann to cook dinner, but she did.
need
6 Let's play a game of chess.
could
7 I'm certain Sarah is bored with her work.
<i>must</i>
8 I strongly advise you to take up sport.
<ul><li><i>must</i></li><li>9 I'm certain Liz isn't interested in your ideas.</li></ul>
7 Thi certain Liz ish t increased in your ideas.

can .....

#### 8. Study the situations and respond to each one using an appropriate modal verb.

1 You want to go on holiday with your friends this year. Ask your parents for *permission*.

Can I go on holiday with my friends this year?

- 2 You are at a job interview. You type fast, you use computers and you speak two foreign languages. Tell the interviewer about your *abilities*.
- 3 Your brother is trying to decide what to buy your mother for her birthday. You *suggest* a box of chocolates.
- 4 Your jacket is dirty and you want to wear it next week. It is *necessary* to take it to the dry cleaner's.
- 5 You want to have a day off work next week. Ask for your boss' permission.
- 6 You are in the car with your uncle. It's hot and you want him to open the window. Make a *request*.
- 7 Your mother is going to the shops. She asks you if you want anything. You tell her it *isn't necessary* to get anything for you.

#### 9. Complete the sentences using must or can't.

1 I'm certain they go to bed early on Sunday nights. They *must go to bed early on Sunday nights* 

2	I'm sure John didn't stay late at the office. John <i>can't have stayed late at the office</i>
3	I'm certain he hasn't arrived yet. He
4	I'm certain they are working together. They
5	I'm sure Amy hasn't finished her homework. Amy
6	I'm certain she was having a bath when I rang. She
7	I'm sure he hasn't won the prize. He
8	I'm sure she is looking for a new house. She
	I'm certain Paul didn't invite Linda to the party. Paul
	) I'm certain you have been planning the project. You

11 I'm sure she was writing a letter. She ......
12 I'm certain they hadn't paid the bill. They ......
13. I'm sure he had been fixing the pipe. He ......

#### 10. Rephrase the following sentences in as many ways as possible.

1 Perhaps Laura has left the phone off the hook. Laura may/might/could have left the phone off the hook

2	Surgeons are obliged to scrub their hands before operating on patients
3	Do you mind if I open the window?
4	It wasn't necessary for Peter to wash the dog, so he didn't
5	Emily managed to reach the top shelf, even though she didn't have a ladder
6	It's forbidden to copy files without the manager's permission
7	Why don't we spend this evening at home?
8	I'm certain Patrick misunderstood my instructions
9	I'm sure Helen didn't know about her surprise party

### 11. Rephrase the following sentences in as many ways as possible.

1	Perhaps they are at work.
	They may/might/could be at work
2	Perhaps he is waiting outside.
	Не
3	It's possible she will work late tonight.
	She
4	It's likely he was driving too fast.
	He
5	It's possible they made a mistake.
	They
6	Perhaps he has missed the bus.
	He
7	It's possible she has been playing in the snow.
	She
8	It's likely we will be leaving tomorrow.
	We
9	It's likely he will stay there.
	He
10	Perhaps she had been trying to call you.
	She
11	It's likely they had seen the film already.
	They
12	2 It's possible he is studying in the library.
	He
12	2. Underline the correct word(s) in bold.

A: Good morning. How 1) <u>can</u>/must I help you, sir?
B: I'd like to book a room for tonight, please.
A: Certainly sir.
B: How much does a single room cost for one night?
A: \$35, sir. Payable in advance.
B: What! 2) Do I have to/Could I pay right now?
A: Yes, I'm afraid you 3) need/must pay in advance,
B: Really. Well! 4) Do / have to/Shall I pay in cash?

A: No, you 5) mustn't/needn't pay in cash. You 6) could/can't pay by credit card if you prefer.

B: This is a bit unusual. I 7) may/must look in my wallet to see if I have enough cash with me.

A: You 8) couldn't/don't have to hurry, sir. Take your time.

- .....
- A: Good morning. Here's the key. 9) Could/Must I leave my luggage here until twelve o'clock, please?
- B: Of course. 10) May/Need I ask if you enjoyed your stay?
- A: Oh yes. I 11) can/must write down the pho number, so that I can stay here again.
- B: You 12) mustn't/don't need to do that, sir. I 13) have to/can give you our card.
- A: Oh, thank you very much. Goodbye.

B: Goodbye.

## 13. Fill in shall or will.

 1. \_\_\_\_\_ I help you with the washing up?
 6. What \_\_\_\_\_ we buy for Bob's birthday?

 2. \_\_\_\_\_ we have pizza for dinner tonight?
 7. \_\_\_\_\_ you take the rubbish out for me, please?

 3. \_\_\_\_\_ you carry this for me, please?
 8. \_\_\_\_\_ we have a barbecue next weekend?

 5. Where \_\_\_\_\_ we sit in the classroom?
 we have a barbecue next weekend?

## 14. Rephrase the following sentences in as many ways as possible.

1. You had better book your flight early. <u>You ought to/should/must book your flight</u> <u>early.</u>

- 2 Would you like me to draw the curtains for you?
- 3 Why don't we go to a Japanese restaurant for change?
- 4 I strongly advise you to see a doctor as soon as possible
- 5 Can you call Greg for me, please?
- 6 You ought to have checked the battery before you left.
- 7 Everybody is obliged to pay taxes.
- 8 You don't need to go to the supermarket today.
- 9 It wasn't necessary for Betty to call a taxi because gave her a lift.

10 They managed to get to the theatre in time, despite the heavy traffic.

### 11 You aren't allowed to keep pets in the building.

#### 12 Do you mind if I take the rest of the day off?

#### 15. Underline the correct word.

- 1 You *may/<u>mustn't</u>* run in the corridors. It's dangerous.
- 2 Can/Should I ask you a question?
- 3 Will/Shall we go out for lunch today?
- 4 You *must/shouldn't* stay at home if you are ill.
- 5 Tommy *can't/couldn't* tell the time when he was a baby.
- 6 My book *can't/mustn't* be in the house. I've looked everywhere.
- 7 You *might/needn't* clean the windows. I've already done them.
- 8 *Will/Shall* I help you?
- 9 You *needn't/mustn't* do the shopping. I'll do it later.
- 10 Sam left late for the airport this morning. He *should/could* have missed his flight.

#### 16. Choose the most appropriate response.

10. Choose the most appropriate response.	
1 Will you open the door for me,	4 Could I go to the cinema tonight,
please?	please?
A Yes, I may. <u><b>B</b></u> Certainly.	A Not at all. B Yes, if you like.
2 Could I speak to you for a moment,	5 We could go to the theatre tonight.
please?	A That's a nice idea. B No, we might
A Yes, of course. B No, you	not.
couldn't.	6 Can I borrow your pen, please?
3 Shall I carry that bag for you?	A Not at all. B Of course.
A No, you won't. B No, it's okay. I can	7 Can you pick the children up from
manage.	school for me?
	A No, I may not. B No problem.
8 Would you please drive me to the airport to	omorrow' My car is being serviced.
A I'd be happy to. B Yes, I would.	
9 Can I help you, sir?	10 Could you hold this for me,
A No, you can't. B No, thank you.	please?
I'm just looking	A Yes, I could. B Of course.

11 Shall I take you to work tomorrow?

B No, you won't.

A Yes, please.

#### 17. Match the items in column A to their synonyms in column B.

Α	В
1 You should/ought	a) You aren't allowed to
2 You must	b) It wasn't necessary for us to (but we did)
3 Shall we?	c) Why don't we?
4 You needn't	d) He managed to
5 We needn't have	e) It wasn't necessary for us to
6 We didn't need to .	f) You had better

7 You mustn't	g) I'm sure she's
8 He was able to	h) Do you mind if I?
9 She must be	i) You are obliged to
10 He can't be	j) It isn't necessary for you to
11 Could I?	k) I'm sure he isn't
12 He may be	1) Perhaps he's

# 18. Rephrase the following sentences in as many ways as possible.1 I advise you to buy this book.

You should/ought to buy this book

- 2 It isn't necessary for him to take the exam again.
- 3 I'm sure Terry isn't at the office.
- 4 It is possible that Janet will call me this evening.
- 5 You aren't allowed to eat and drink in the classrooms.
- 6 We are obliged to clock in and out every day.
- 7 *I'm sure the boys weren't* upset with the result.
- 8 Would you like me to do anything to help?
- 9 Perhaps we will go for a picnic on Sunday afternoon.
- 10 Sam managed to reach the top of the mountain after climbing for several hours.
- 11 How about throwing a party on your birthday?
- 12 It wasn't necessary for John to attend the seminar.
- 13 They are obliged to go to a meeting every week.
- 14 How about visiting some friends on Saturday?

## **19.** Underline the correct words(s).

- 1 A: <u>Could/May/Shall</u> you tell me the time, please?B: Yes. It's a quarter past ten.
- 2 A: *Would/Shall/Will* we go shopping tonight?B: Yes. We need to buy some food.
- 3 A: *May/Should/Would* I help you, madam?
  - B: Yes, please. Can/Shall/Would I have these shoes in black, please?
- 4 A: Would/Should/Shall I get you another cup tea?

B: No, thank you. I've had enough.

- 5 A: *Can/Shall/May* you post this letter for me, please?B: Certainly. I'll do it on my way home from work.
- 6 A: Shall/Would/Could I speak to Jenny, please? I
  - B: I'm sorry, she's not here at the moment.
  - A: Oh. *Must/Shall/Would* I call later, then?
- 7 A: *May/Will/Would* I have a glass of water, please?B: Yes, I'll get you one.
  - A: Could/May/Shall you put ice in it, please?
- 8 A: Did you call Jane?
- B: No, I *didn't need to/needn't* because I saw her at work.
- 9 A: Shall/May/Could you help me, please?
- B: Yes, of course.
- 10 A: You *mustn't/needn't/couldn't* lock the door.B: Oh, will you do it when you leave?

# 20. Underline the correct words(s).

Dear Victoria,

I'm writing to tell you about the play I'm going to be in. It's called 'Only for You', and I've got the leading role. I have a lot of lines and I 1) <u>must/might learn them all</u> before opening night.

We're performing the play for the first time on Friday, night. We've been told that a TV company 2) *must/may* come to film it, so I 3) *could/must* be on television. I 4) needn't/might even become famous!

We 5) *might/have* to rehearse the play every night until Friday, because everything 6) *must/shall* be perfect for the performance. We 7) *couldn't/mustn*'t make any mistakes. 8) *Can/Must* you come to see the play, or will you be at work? I hope you'll be able to come. If not, I'll write and tell you how it went.

I 9) *could/must* go and learn my lines now. See you soon.

Yours, Charles

## 21. Choose the correct answer.

1 'You ... C... be late for work.' 'I know. I'm leaving now.'

A needn't **B** must **C** mustn't

2 'Jim ......lose some weight. His doctor said so.' Then he must go on a diet.'

A mustn't **B** can **C** has to

3 'I..... go to the bank today. I have enough money.' 'Well, I'll go alone, then.'

A needn't **B** have to **C** must

4 'Did you deliver that parcel for me?' 'No, I ....find the house, so I've come back to get a map.'

A can **B** could **C** couldn't

5 'I.....clean the house today. It's dirty.' I'll help you.'

A needn't **B** must **C** mustn't

6 'I......feed the dog at lunchtime. My brother did it in the morning.' 'You can do it this evening, then.'

A didn't need to **B** needn't have **C** need 7 'Do you need any help?' 'Yes. I open the window. It's stuck.' C can't A could **B** am able to 8 'I.....swim until I was ten.' 'Well, I didn't learn until I was eleven.' A can **B** can't C couldn't 9 'Can I talk to you, please?' 'Sorry, Igo now. I'm late for a meeting.' A mustn't **B** has to **C** must 10 'Is Tom good at languages?' 'Yes, he already speak French, German and Italian. C could A can't **B** can 11 The test was too difficult for me.' 'Oh dear, I do it quite easily.' **C** can A was able to **B** can't 12 'Where's Tom?' 'He's not at work, so he ..... be at the library. **B** can't C can A must 13 '..... we go shopping today?' 'No. I'd prefer to go tomorrow.' **B** Shall C Will A Ought 14 'Sorry Mum. I've broken a plate.' 'You be more careful.' A may **B** should **C** might 15 'Where's your father?' 'He ..... be in the garage.' A might **B** can C mustn't

#### 22. Fill in can, can't, must, mustn't, needn't or have to.

- 1. A: Is Mathew very rich?
- B: He *must* be. He drives a Ferrari.
- 2 A: Would you like to come shopping with me?
- B: Yes, but I ..... I ..... do my homework this afternoon.
- 3 A: Is Tom interested in music?
  - B: Oh yes. He .....play the guitar and the saxophone.
- 4 A: Is Katie at home?
  - B: No, she ..... be. Her car is not here.
- 5 A: Can I go to the cinema tonight?B: Yes, but you ..... be late home.
- 7 A: I bought you this present.B: Oh, you ......have. It's not my birthday!
- 8 A: Excuse me, I'm looking for Barkwest Bank.B: I'm afraid I .....help you. I don't live here.

#### 23. Choose the correct answer.

- 1 A letter arrives at your house. You are sure it is from Paul. A It might be from Paul.
  - B It must be from Paul.
  - C It may have been from Paul.
- 2 You have toothache. Your mother gives you some advice.A You may go to the dentist.

- B You should go to the dentist.
- C You might go to the dentist.
- 3 You are looking for your scarf. You think it is upstairs
  - A It can't be upstairs.
  - B It should be upstairs.
  - C It could be upstairs.
- 4 Your father told you to do your homework. You tell your friends.
  - A I will do my homework.
  - B I have to do my homework.
  - C I might do my homework.
- 5 You want your neighbour to babysit for you tonight.
  - A Would you babysit for me tonight?
  - B Shall you babysit for me tonight?
  - C Must you babysit for me tonight?
- 6 You did the washing-up for your mother, but she didn't expect you to.
  - A You mustn't have done the washing-up.
  - B You might not have done the washing-up.
  - C You needn't have done the washing-up.
- 7 There was a good film on TV. You are sure John didn't watch it.
  - A John should have watched it.
  - B John might have watched it.
  - C John can't have watched it.
- 8 You want to have a pet in your flat, but your landlord tells you it isn't allowed. A You mustn't keep pets in the flat.
  - B You needn't keep pets in the flat.
  - C You will not keep pets in the flat.
- 9 An old lady is trying to open the door. You offer to do it for her.
  - A Couldn't I open the door for you?
  - B Must I open the door for you?
  - C Shall I open the door for you?
- 10 You offer to do the shopping, but your mother says it isn't necessary.
  - A You must do the shopping.
  - B You needn't do the shopping.
  - C You could do the shopping.

# 24. Choose the correct answer. 1.

You  $\underline{B}$  do your homework before you watch TV.

A can't B should C shall 2 .....I come in? It's rather cold out here.

A Should B May C Must 3. You ..... water the plants this weekend; they look dry. A are able to B needn't C ought to

4. ..... you collect the children from school, please?

A Must B Will C May

5. .....you play the piano? A Can **B** Must C Should

6 I buy some milk. There isn't any		9 Youwalk to work. I'll give you a			
left.			lift.		
A mustn't	<b>B</b> may	C must	A must	<b>B</b> needn't	C may
7 When I call you?		10 Timbe out. There are no lights			
A shall	<b>B</b> must	C needn't	on.		
8 I swim before I was able to walk.		A shall	<b>B</b> should	C must	
A might	<b>B</b> could	C can			

### In other words

Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence

1 Perhaps Tom is tired.	5 You aren't allowed to use this		
may Tom may be tired.	car.		
2 I'm sure she isn't studying hard.	mustn't You mustn't use this car.		
can't She can't be studying hard.	6 It wasn't necessary for him to book a		
3 It is possible that they went out	table, but he did.		
yesterday.	have He needn't have booked a table.		
could They could have gone out	7 Let's meet again tomorrow night.		
yesterday.	can We can meet again tomorrow		
4 It isn't necessary for Joe to come here.	night.		
have Joe doesn't have to come here.	8 I advise you to call a doctor,		
	should You should call a doctor.		

# 25. Complete each sentence with two to five words, including the word in bold.

1 It is possible that he has spent all the money,
<i>could</i> He <u>could have spent</u> all the money.
2 I advise you to take a course in literature.
should You in literature.
3 It is possible that the police are questioning him.
<i>may</i> The police him.
4 I'm sure he is lying about his age.
<i>must</i> He about his age.
5 Let's have a break in five minutes.
<i>can</i> We in five
minutes.
6 It wasn't necessary for her to give me a lift, but she did.
o it wash theeessary for her to give me a mit, but she and.
<i>have</i> She me a lift.
<ul><li><i>have</i> She me a lift.</li><li>7 You aren't allowed to throw litter in the park,</li></ul>
have She me a lift.
<ul><li><i>have</i> She me a lift.</li><li>7 You aren't allowed to throw litter in the park,</li></ul>
<ul> <li><i>have</i> She</li></ul>
<ul><li><i>have</i> She me a lift.</li><li>7 You aren't allowed to throw litter in the park,</li><li><i>mustn't</i> You litter in the park.</li></ul>
<ul> <li><i>have</i> She</li></ul>
<ul> <li>have She</li></ul>

may	Dan	hospital.			
11 It wa	sn't necessary for her to call, but she did.				
have	She,	but she did.			
12 I advise you to have a rest.					
should	You	.a rest.			

#### 26. Translate into English.

1. Тобі не треба приносити матеріали сьогодні, я зможу продивитися їх тільки завтра. 2. Ніколи не треба метушитися. 3. Я вважаю, що ти не наважишся викинути її стару одежу. 4. Вона мала стільниковий телефон, і я завжди міг легко з нею зв'язатися. 5. Ви обов'язково повинні скуштувати це вино. Воно просто чудове. 6. Мабуть, я поміркую над вашою пропозицією. 7. Мені завтра знову доведеться йти до банку, тому що повідомлення ще не прийшло. 8. Як ти могла взяти до школи татову ручку? 9. Ти міг би сам потурбуватися про подарунок. 10. Вона повинна була зателефонувати опівдні, але змогла зробити це тільки увечері. 11. Я обіцяю, що ця хата буде твоєю. 12. Ану, не дихай цілу хвилину! 13. Я вже давно вмію керувати автом, але поки що не можу собі дозволити купити навіть мотоцикл. 14. Ти допоможеш мені вишити цю серветку? 15. Вона годинами сиділа біля комину, дивлячись у вогонь. 16. Ви можете зрізати будь-які квіти в нашому садку. 17. Не треба бути таким самовпевненим, коли йдеться про чемпіонат світу. 18. Я ніколи не припиню сперечатися з тобою. 19. Ти могла б хоч підписати листівку! 20. "Титаніку" судилося затонути у першому ж рейсі.

## 27. Translate into English.

1. Не треба було обрізати спідницю, тепер вже нічого не виправиш. 2. Чи не могли б ви зателефонувати на станцію техобслуговування і викликати буксир? 3. Вона завжди могла відрізнити копію від оригіналу з першого погляду. 4. От побачиш, ти отримаєш свої гроші завтра вранці. 5. Пляма ніяк не відмивалася. 6. Вам слід сходити на виставку воскових фігур. 7. Не смій підвищувати голос на батька. 8. Мені не потрібно було купувати форму, тому що я міг взяти її у брата. 9. Йдемо разом на ковзанку? 10. Я нічого не можу зрозуміти з цієї записки. 11. Дітям не слід дивитися фільми жахів. 12. Де ми повинні залишитися на ніч? 13. Я змушена здавати кімнату, тому що не можу звести кінці з кінцями. 14. Тобі слід було завести будильник, щоб не проспати. 15. Мені не потрібно заводити будильник, собака будить мене о шостій. 16. Дерево та пластик не можуть слугувати провідником струму. 17. Вона крутиться перед дзеркалом з ранку до вечора. 18. Вам слід було залишити плащ вдома. Дощу не буде. 19. Чи можу я поговорити з бухгалтером? - Зачекайте, вона прийде за кілька хвилин. 20. Тобі б краще здати цей піджак до хімчистки.

#### 28. Translate into English.

1. Якби ми мали човен, ми могли б переправитися на той берег. 2. Якби ти не був таким упертим, ми могли б уже давно дійти згоди. 3. Якби вона не поїхала з міста, ми могли б її теж запросити. 4. Якби ви все ж вирішили піти в гості, я могла б посидіти з вашою дитиною. 5. Якби я отримала зарплатню, я могла б купити

трохи фруктів. 6. Якби ти не зробив ту саму помилку чотири рази, я могла б поставити тобі гарну оцінку за твір. 7. Якби чоботи не муляли так, ми могли б ще трохи пройтися. 8. Якби ми здали багаж до камери схову, ми могли б поблукати трохи містом. 9. Я могла б подати обід за годину, якби хтось допоміг мені на кухні. 10. Якби ми не купили вчора телевізор, я могла б придбати собі нове пальто. 11. Якби вона звернулася до мене з таким проханням, я б ніколи Не змогла їй відмовити. 12. Якби ти трохи помовчала, ми могли б почути, про що вони шепотілися. 13. Якби вода не була такою холодною, ми могли б скупатися. 14. Якби їй не стало погано в автобусі, ми могли б зайти до вас по дорозі додому. 15. Якби квитки не були такими дорогими, ми могли б ходити до театру частіше. 16. Якби нас попередили про епідемію раніше, ми могли б застосувати профілактичні заходи. 17. Якби він все ж таки прийшов, я могла б вас познайомити. 18. Якби ви сподобалися режисеру, він міг би запропонувати вам головну роль. 19. Якби ми знали всі подробиці, ми могли б зробити точніші висновки. 20. Якби ти не прийшла до мого приходу, я могла б залишити ключ у сусідів.

#### 29. Translate into English.

1. Можливо, вона вміє читати думки інших? 2. Невже вона знову намагається посварити нас? 3. Певно, він розбагатів зовсім недавно. 4. Можливо, гроза пройде стороною. 5. Мабуть, я знаю щось таке, про що ти навіть не здогадуєшся. 6. Можливо, він колись зрозуміє, як багато ти для нього зробив. 7. Напевно, він приховує правду щодо його ролі у банкрутстві фірми. 8. Певно, це дуже розкішний та дорогий готель. 9. Операція триває, напевно, вже півтори години. 10. Певно, прийом був грандіозний. 11. Можливо, він і недуже здібний, але надзвичайно старанний. 12. Напевно, її просто ніхто ніколи не виховував. 13. Не може бути, що він так погано вчиться. 14. Невже вона знову дивиться мультфільми? 14. Мабуть, він не зміг сам повісити картину. 15. Напевно, вона підслуховувала за дверима, тому що збентежилася, коли побачила мене. 16. Невже він залишився таким самим хвальком, як і у дитинстві? 17. Певно, ви всі вже чули цю легенду. 18. Можливо, ти ніколи не зможеш зрозуміти, що саме зв'язує їх усі ці роки. 19. Напевно, він одружений, якщо носить обручку. 20. Можливо, він послухається тебе і спуститься до обіду.

#### 30. Translate into English.

1. Напевно, це страшенно нудно - весь час сидіти вдома і ні з ким не спілкуватися. 2. Дитина плакала так голосно, що її, мабуть, чула вся вулиця. 3. Судячи з його вигляду, йому, напевно, років з двадцять. 4. Очевидно, він знову відхилив пропозицію продати свій дім. 5. Ви, напевно, не знали, що наша компанія вже давно не займається будівельними матеріалами. 6. Дивись, ліфт знову працює. - Напевно, приходив механік. 7. Можливо, нам з вами по дорозі? Я міг би провести вас. 8.Невже ти не дочитав книгу до кінця? Але ж тебе можуть викликати. 9. Я обдзвонив усіх друзів Сема. Мабуть, з ним щось трапилося. 10. Не може бути, щоб ваш телефон не працював уже два тижні. Ви могли б викликати монтера. 11. Я залишуся вдома, тому що мені може зателефонувати моя подруга.

12. Напевно, вона помилилася, коли рахувала гроші, не може бути, щоб вона зробила це навмисно. 13. Очевидно, їй не сподобалися мої слова, якщо вона не приходить більше і не телефонує. 14. Можливо, вона не розуміє всієї серйозності ситуації і продовжує опиратися. 15. Вона живе в цій квартирі вже, напевно, близько двох місяців. 16. Очевидно, він добре пише, якщо його книги користуються таким великим попитом. 17. Не шукай його. Він, напевно, знову десь грає з хлопцями в футбол. 18. Невже вона нічого неї знала про його плани на майбутнє? 19. Не може бути, щоб вона жартувала, коли розповідала нам про свої проблеми. 20. Мабуть, вона просто боїться розповісти тобі про цей випадок.

## UNIT 2

#### MOOD

In Ukrainian, when we want to characterize an action as unreal, probable, possible, desirable, necessary, etc., we use the *subjunctive mood*: «прочитав би», «сказав би».

This mood has on only one form, which is used when speaking about the present, past and future.

In English there are four groups of forms which can represent an action as desirable, necessary, possible, problematic, unreal, etc.:

1) the conditional mod	
Luvo	should do sth
I, we	should have done sth

Us she it thay	would do sth	
He, she, it, they	would have done sth	

2) subjunctive II

/ J	
I ha sha it	were (was) sth.; did sth
I, he, she, it	had been sth.; had done sth

Wa you thay	were (was) sth.; did sth
We, you, they	had been sth.; had done sth

3) suppositional mood

I, he, she, it, we, you,	should do sth
they	should have done sth

4) subjunctive I

I, he, she, it, we, you, they	<b>be</b> sth. <b>, do</b> sth
----------------------------------	--------------------------------

#### **CONDITIONAL MOOD**

# **1.** Translate into English, using should / would + indefinite infinitive when speaking of the present or future + perfect infinitive when speaking about the past.

1. Ти правильно зробив, що не пішов. Картина тобі не сподобалася б. 2. Все трапилось тому, що його там не було. Він знав би, що робити. 3. Ми так давно не бачились. Не знаю, впізнала б я її зараз. 4. Мені не подобається твій переклад. Вона б зробила його краще. 5. Мені б не хотілося йти туди сьогодні. 6. Ти завжди мені допомагаєш. Що б я без тебе робила? 7. Як добре, що ти був вдома. Що б я без тебе робила? 8. Було б розумно завтра заночувати в таборі. 9. Було б чудово скласти екзамен сьогодні. 10. Я повернула книгу до бібліотеки. Ти все рівно не став би її читати. 11. Кожній дитині сподобалася б така лялька. 12. Це була цікава

робота. Кожен з нас погодився б тоді на цю пропозицію із задоволенням. 13. Мені не подобається ця людина. Довіряти їй я б не став. 14. В подібній ситуації він повів би себе так само. 15. Правду кажучи, я міг би піти туди сьогодні. 16. Я не знала, що він був в Києві. Я б могла дати йому книги.17. Ви могли б віднести їй це після лекції?

## Sentence patterns with the Conditional Mood

a)	
but for this	sb would do sth
	(I, we <b>should do</b> sth)
	sb would have done sth
	(I, we <b>should have done</b> sth)

## 2. Translate into English.

1. Мені не має з ким залишити дитину. Якби не це, я б теж поїхав. 2. Ми запізнилися на поїзд. Якби не це, ми б вже давно приїхали. 3. Якби не вона, вони ніколи б не сварилися. 4. Якби не вона, дитина потонула б. 5. Якби не ваша допомога, вона не наздогнала б групи. 6. Якби не його діагноз, її не оперували б вчасно. 7. Якби не діти, вони залишилися б в місті на літо. 8. Якби не погода, ми б прекрасно провели літо. 9. З неї вийшов би тоді прекрасний тренер, якби не її запальний характер. 10. Це була б не погана робота, якби не орфографічні помилки.

#### b)

hut for this	sb could / might sth
but for this	sb could / might have done sth

# 3. Compose sentences of the pattern but for ... + the conditional mood or a modal verb in subjunctive II.

1. He wants to go fishing but he has a bad cold. 2. He could not see the play as he had some work to do. 3. She wasn't alone in the house. Her husband lay asleep in his room after the night shift. 4. I don't want to tell you this. But I promised to. 5. In the end he went to see a doctor. His wife made him to. 6. He didn't die. The operation saved him. 7. We didn't have a very good time after all. The weather was too bad. 8. It was impossible to read inscription in the dark. Then he remembered he had a torch. 9. He has the makings of a good teacher but he has a slight defect of speech. 10. Of course I want to help you. But I've a conference today. 11. He had a good guide so he could climb the mountain. 12. It was only because the ice was so good that she could set a new record. 13. I could do it all in so short a time only because of your kindness and understanding. 14. You can't do it only because of a certain lack of concentration.

to do sth	would help sb
to have done sth	would have helped sb

# 4. Replace the Infinitives in brackets by should / would + infinitive (indefinite or perfect)

1. To stop now (to mean) losing everything. 2. To tell her the truth (can help) her. 3. To have refused (to hurt) the old people. 4. To have been told so (to upset) him greatly. 5. It (to please) him no end to have seen an old friend. 6. It (to delight) everybody to have heard the news. 7. To go back now (to be) impossible. 8. It (to be) nice to be able to say it. 9. It (to be) queer to feel stranger in one's own home town. `10. To have given him a hand (to cost) you very little. 11. To know it definitely (to be) a great help. 12. It (to be) a great privilege to have known you personally. 13. He saw it all now. To have landed on that field (to be) certain death. 14. To have settled the case out of court (to save) endless litigations.

d)

otherwise (or)	sb <b>would do</b> sth (I, we <b>should do</b> sth)
	sb <b>would have done</b> sth (I, we <b>should have done</b> sth)
	(1, we should have done sur)

## 5. Translate into English.

1. Я просто вивчив текст напам'ять, інакше я б все переплутав. 2. Якби не ти, я б ніколи не впорався з цією роботою. 3. Я б не сказала, що це легка вправа. 4. Він би вам цього не порадив. 5. Вона не просила допомоги, та вони й не допомогли б їй. 6. Крем гарний, але з меншою кількістю цукру був би кращим. 7. Лікар про це не знав. Він би заборонив їй підійматись. 8. Мені нічого не повідомили про це. Я б залюбки пішла. 9. Якби не дощ, ми б зараз прогулялись. 10. Він не знає про конференцію, інакше він був би тут. 11. Не засмучуйся. Ніхто не зробив би цього краще. 12. Напевно потяг запізнився, інакше вони б вже приїхали. 13. Чому ти не дозволяєш їй носити коси? Вона б дуже мило виглядала. 14. Звичайно, він зупинився б поспілкуватись з нами, але він надто поспішав. 15. Концерт розпочався б раніше, але співачка загубила ноти. 16. Чому ти не пішов туди іншим разом? Вони були б раді.

## **SUBJUNCTIVE II**

I, you, he, she, it, we, they	did sth
	have done sth

### Sentence Patterns with Subjunctive II

The forms of subjunctive II denote *advice*, *preference* and *wish* in the following sentence patterns:

1) фdvice

sh had better	do sth
sb had better	not do sth

6. Translate into English.

1. Вам краще їхати до центра на метро. 2. Йому краще пересісти біля парку Культури. 3. Краще не намагайся зробити це сьогодні. 4. На мою думку, мені краще не втручатись. 5. Краще запишіть його адресу. 6. Краще не стійте тут. 7. Краще поясніть їй, що робити. 8. Краще пишіть олівцем. 9. Їй Краще не їхати на південь. 10. Краще, щоб хто-небудь залишився тут. 11. Їм краще не купатися в день приїзду. 12. Краще, щоб хто-небудь попередив її.

## 2) 3reference:

Sb would / had rather	do sth
(sooner)	not do sth

## 7. Translate into English.

1. Я краще вип'ю чашку чаю. 2. Чим тобі більш хочеться зайнятись? 3. Куди ти більш хочеш піти? 4. Ти б хотіла зараз пообідати? 5. Я б віддала перевагу про це не говорити. 6. Я б віддала перевагу не втручатись. 7. Він віддав би перевагу не залишатись там не на день. 8. Не йдіть туди, якщо ви цього не бажаєте.

3)	цish:
5)	цізп.

If only		did sth
Oh, if	sb	had done sth
Oh, that		

## 8. Translate into English (give two variants where possible).

1. Ах, якби він був зараз тут! 2. Ах, якби ви знали тоді всю правду! 3. Ах, якби ви самі все це бачили! 4. Він виступав першим. Ах, якби ви чули, як він говорив! 5. Тепер вже пізно. Ах, якби ви мені вчасно сказали! 6. Якби ти тільки розумів, як це глупо! 7. Тепер вони сміються наді мною. Ах, навіщо я показав їм ці вірші! 8. Ах, якби мама ніколи про це не дізналась! 9. Ах, якби я тільки склала той іспит! 10. Ах, якби погода завтра була гарною!

## THE SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD

I, you, he, she, it, we,	should do sth
they	should have done sth

The present tense of the suppositional mood (should do sth) is used in clauses of condition to show that the action is not likely to take place. Such clauses may be called clauses of *problematic condition*.

## 9. Translate into English.

1. Якщо ви все ж туки запізнитесь на поїзд, ви можете дістатись туди автобусом. 2. Якщо виявиться, що адреси він не знає, запитайте секретаря. 3. Якщо вам трапиться зустріти його, перекажіть йому, що ми його не забули. 4. Якщо виявиться, що туфлі їй замалі, їх буде носити її молодша сестра. 5. Якщо ви випадково побачите цей словник, купіть і мені екземпляр. 6. Якщо вам все ж таки стане недобре в літаку, прийміть одну чи дві пігулки. 7. Якщо вода виявиться холодною, не дозволяйте дітям купатись. 8. Якщо станеться, що він забуде свою обіцянку, я йому нагадаю. 9. Якщо він раптово повернеться рано, зателефонуй мені. 10. Якщо ви все ж таки зможете приїхати, ми будемо дуже раді.

## **SUBJUNCTIVE I AND II**

# 10. Analyse the form and meaning of the Subjunctive. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Oh, if I only knew what to do. 2. If it would only stop raining for a single day. 3. I would never allow anybody to hurt my child 4. A few years ago I would have thought it wrong. 5. Come what may she was determined that they should never meet again. 6. It was urgent that he should look into the matter. 7. It was proposed that the conference open at 10 a.m. 8. I move that the meeting be adjourned. 9. Now, then, children. It is high time you were washed and dressed. 10. It was time they made up their quarrel. 11. a) I wish he were with us. b) I wish he had been with us yesterday, c) I wish it were not raining now. 12. I wish I knew what to do. 13. I wish he had thought of it before. 14. I wish you would believe me. 15. We wished he would accept our proposal. 16. We wished she wouldn't find fault with everybody. 17. I wish I could help you. 18. I wish you could have let me know beforehand. 19. a) I felt as if I were blind, b) I felt as if I had gone blind. 20. She looked as if she were angry with me. 21. He looked at me as if I had gone mad. 22. She moved about as if she were made of glass. 23. The detective made up his mind to see the driver so that he might give him the details of the accident. 24. He dropped his voice so that the other men in the room should not hear him. 25. He withdrew his eyes lest she should read them. 26. And if anything should happen, keep in touch. 27. Should you care for a full explanation, you may call any day between 10 and 11 a. m. 28. But for the rain we would make an outing. 29. If it had not been for the storm, the ship would have arrived much earlier. 30. I should feel absolutely happy, but for your unpleasant remark. 31. If it had not been for that war, he would have graduated by now.

# 11. Transform the sentences using the Subjunctive Mood in object clauses after the verbs: suggest, demand, order, recommend, propose, move.

A. 1. The doctor advised me to give up smoking. 2. His father told him to join the Navy.3. The chairman's motion was to discuss the resolution point by point. 4. His proposal was to set up a special commission to investigate the matter.

**B.** 1. The chief said: "Clear up the matter." 2. The marchers should out: "Put an end to the bloodshed!".3. The police inspector said: "You must get more evidence to prove his guilt." 4. The president said: "Mr Douglas must be expelled from the club."

# 12. Transform the sentences using subject clauses introduced by It is (was) time.

1. It's time for the children to go to bed. 2. It's time for them to make up their quarrel. 3. It's time for you to know this rule. 4. Isn't it time to have dinner? 5. Isn't it time for him to stop behaving like this?

## 13. Transform the sentences using object clauses after the verb wish.

1. a) It's a pity he is not with us. b) It's a pity he was not with us yesterday. 2. What a pity, it is raining. 3. It's a pity you don't believe me. 4. It's a pity you didn't follow the doctor's advice. 5. I'm afraid I don't know what to do. 6. It's a pity you don't do anything to improve your pronunciation. 7. I'm sorry I can't help you. 8. I'm sorry I couldn't help you when you needed it. 9. I'm afraid he is very angry with me. 10. We were afraid he had failed us. 11. He was afraid everybody knew his secret. 12. I'm afraid they've lost the way. 13. She was afraid she had made a mistake.

### 14. Replace the infinitive by the Subjunctive.

1. If it (not to be) so dark, I (to read) a little before I go to sleep. 2. If it (not to be) so dark, we (not to lose) the way last night. 3. The flowers (to grow) much better if you (to water) • them regularly. 4. I (cannot go) today even if you (ask) me. 5. We've got only ten minutes left. We (not to make) it even if we (to hurry up). 6. If we (to book) tickets well in advance, we (not to be queuing) for them now. 7. Even if I (to want) to, I (can do) nothing about it now. 8. The accident (not to "happen) if the driver (to observe) traffic rules. 9. It's too cold. I (to go) for a swim if it (to be) warmer. 10. If he (not to be) so absent-minded, he (not to lose) his papers. 11. You're wrong. I (to reconsider) your decision if I (to be) you. 12. I had too little time. I (not to translate) the article even if I (to have) a dictionary.

### 15. Transform each pair of statements into a conditional sentence.

1. It is raining hard. We can't go to the country. 2. You didn't let me know beforehand. Therefore I didn't come. 3. He is very absent-minded. No wonder, he lost his papers. 4. Too bad, you didn't take the medicine yesterday. You would be better now. 5. No wonder he failed. He hadn't worked hard for the exam. 6. I was about to finish the translation, but you interrupted my work. 7. I have no dictionary. I shan't have translated the article by tomorrow. 8. The goal-keeper was hurt badly. The team lost the game. 9. I didn't get the ticket yesterday. Pity, I shan't be able to leave tonight. 10. We've been queuing for three hours now. I wish we had booked the tickets well in advance.

### 16. Translate into English.

1. Звичайно, він не отримав листа, інакше він прийшов би. Він був би вже тут. 2. Суп був би прекрасним, якби ти поклав менше солі. 3. Він кремезна людина, і просити його про допомогу було б марно. 4. Ходімо! Чекати довше було б глупо. 5. Краще залишатись тут до ранку. 6. Ах, якби дощ зупинився! 7. Якщо все ж таки мене не буде вдома, коли ти прийдеш, попроси сусідів дати тобі ключ. 8. Вона була неперевершеною в цій ролі, але її сестра була б кращою. 9. Ах, якби я тоді знала про це! Я б ніколи не погодилась! 10. Я б віддала перевагу залишитись вдома. 11. Як на мене, їх краще не їсти сьогодні салату. 12. Шкода, що мама не змогла приїхати. Їх би тут сподобалось. 13. Роби, як хочеш. Я б її не запрошувала. 14. Що б ти зробила на моєму місці? 15. Якби не вітер, день був би чудовим! 16. Можливо, вам краще зараз пообідати? 17. Навіть якби він і не допоміг мені, я б закінчив все вчасно. 18. Якби не орфографія, твір був би непоганим. 19. Вона не бачить нас, інакше вона б привіталась. 20. Я б краще з ним не сперечалась. Як на

мене, він правий. 21. Краще купи трішки сиру та масла по дорозі додому. 22. Я не хочу обідати. Я б краще взяла бутерброд та чашку кави. 23. Звичайно, він хоче там працювати, інакше він не погодився б туди їхати. 24. Якби не туфлі, які були надто тісними, я б чудово провела час. 25. Ось ви б, наприклад, так вчинили?

## I WISH

### 1. Open the brackets using Subjunctive after 'I wish'

1. I wish I (to know) French.

2. She fell and broke her leg. I wish she (to be) more careful.

3. I wish you (to read) more English books in future.

4. I feel sick. I wish I (not to eat) all the ice cream.

5. They need a singer for the choir. I wish I (can) sing.

6. My parrot has died. I wish I (to look after) it better.

7. I can't remember her telephone number. I wish I (can).

8. I wish I (not to lend) him my car: he has broken it.

9. My watch has stopped. I wish I (to have) a better watch.

10. I feel so tired. I wish I (not to stay up) so late last night.

11. My apartment is rather small. I wish I (to have) a bigger one.

12. I wish I (not to spend) all my money last night.

13. I wish I (to know) the answer to this question.

14. I wish you (to phone) me yesterday.

15. I wish I (to know) then what I know now.

### 2. Rephrase the following sentences using 'I wish'

1. I am not very fit.	9. She doesn't know enough English.
2. We weren't together.	10.My son didn't take my advice.
3. He was too upset that day.	11.His room is untidy.
4. They couldn't come here.	12. They wasted much time watching
5. It's very hot today.	TV.
6. My parents are abroad.	13.He doesn't have a lot of friends.
7. It's snowing.	14. I can't swim.
8. He has read my letter.	

## . . . . . . . . .

# 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. 1 A: I wish I ...could play... (play) a musical instrument.

- B: You should take lessons.
- 2 A: If only the wind ......(stop) blowing so hard.B: Yes, it's very windy today, isn't it?
- 3 A: I wish John ..... (come) with us.B: So do I. He would have really enjoyed it.
- 4 A: Paul, I wish you ..... (stop) making so much noise. B: Sorry, I'll try.
- 5 A: I wish I ..... (study) more when I was at school.B: It doesn't matter now. You've got a good job.
- 6 A: I wish I ..... (be) young again.

B: So do I. We had some good times back then.

- 7 A: I wish I ..... (not/speak) to Jane like that.
- B: Don't worry. I'm sure she'll forgive you.
- 8 A: If only Bob.....(call) me.B: Well, he promised to call today.
- 9 A: I'm exhausted. I wish I .....(do) some of the housework yesterday.B: Sorry I wasn't here to help you.
- 10 A: I wish you ......(make) less noise when you come in.B: It's not my fault. The door squeaks when you open it.
- 11 A: Are you going to your school reunion party next week?B: No. I wish I.....(go) because I would like to see everyone again.

### 4. Paraphrase the following sentences.

**Model**: It's a pity she is so indifferent to music. — I wish she were not so indifferent to music.

Unfortunately, I did not see him there. — I wish I had seen him there.

**A.** 1. It's a pity he is not at school now. 2. It's a pity you are so absent-minded. **3.** I am sorry I didn't speak French. 4. Unfortunately, he is busy now. **5.** What a pity you are leaving our school. 6. It's a pity she is so shy. 7. I am sorry I can't help you. 8. Unfortunately, I have no Ukrainian-English dictionary.

**B.** 1. I am sorry I haven't read that article. 2. It's a pity she went there yesterday. **3.** What a pity she wasn't invite to take part in the concert. 4. Unfortunately, the night was very dark. 5. I am sorry I said this in his presence. 6. It's a pity the weather was so bad. 7. I am sorry I didn't learn this language in my childhood.

#### 5. Open the brackets using Subjunctive after 'I wish'

1. I wish I (to know) Spanish. 2. I wish I (not to drink) so much coffee in the evening: I could not sleep half the night. 3. I wish you (to read) more in future. 4. I wish I never (to suggest) this idea. 5. I wish I (to be) at yesterday's party: it must have been very merry. 6. I wish we (to meet) again next summer. 7. Don't you wish you (to see) that performance before? 8. They wished they (not to see) this horrible scene again. 9. The unfortunate pupil wished he (not to forget) to learn the rule. 10. I wish I (to have) a season ticket to the Philharmonic next winter. 11. I wish I (to consult) the teacher when I first felt that mathematics was too difficult for me. 12. I love sunny weather. I wish it (to be) warm and fine all the year round. 13. I wish I (not to lend) Nick my watch: he has broken it. 14. I wish you (to send) word as soon as you arrive. 15. I wish I (not to have) to do my homework every day. 16. I wish you (to go) skiing with me yesterday: I had such a good time!

### 6. Paraphrase the following sentences using 'I wish'.

1. It's a pity you are not with us these days. 2. My friend regrets not having entered the university. 3. He was sorry not to have had enough time to finish his test-paper. 4. It's a pity we shan't be able to reach home before tea-time. 5. I am sorry I made you upset by telling you this news. 6. What a pity you don't know enough physics. 7. Unfortunately they won't return before Christmas. 8. The student was sorry he had not

studied the material better and had shown such poor knowledge at the examination. 9. It's a pity that you did not send for us last night.

# 7. Translate into English using 'I wish'.

- 1. а) Шкода, що ви прийшли так пізно.
  - б) Шкода, що ви не прийшли раніше.
- 2. а) Шкода, що ми прийшли до її приходу.б) Шкода, що ми не дочекались її приходу.
- 3. а) На жаль, вони ще нічого не знають.
  - б) На жаль, вони вже знають про це.
- 4. а) Шкода, що він такий легковажний.б) Шкода, що він не достатньо серйозний.
- 5. а) Я тепер жалкую, що не прислухався до його поради.
  - б) Я тепер жалкую, що послідував його пораді.

# 8. Translate into English using 'I wish'.

- 1. Якби я мав вільний час зараз!
- 2. Шкода, що я запізнився на зустріч.
- 3. Якби я вмів малювати!
- 4. Шкода, що вона не знала відповіді на запитання.
- 5. Добре було б, якби у мене була відпустка зараз.
- 6. Шкода, що я послухав їхньої поради.
- 7. Жаль, що вони не змінили своєї думки.
- 8. Добре було б, якби ти знав правду.
- 9. Якби ти сказав мені про це рішення!
- 10.Шкода, що він не припинив робити такі помилки.
- 11. Жаль, що вона хворіє.
- 12.Шкода, що вже пізно йти на збори.
- 13.Вона шкодувала, що перестала працювати там.
- 14. Якби він вмів плавати!
- 15. Добре було б, якби ви взяли участь в обговоренні Цього проекту.
- 16.Шкода, що ти не застав мене вдома.
- 17. Жаль, що дитина не цікавиться історією.
- 18.Шкода, що ви провели літо в місті.
- 19.Шкода, що він не в Києві.
- 20.Я б хотів згадати її адресу.
- 21.Шкода, що вона не розуміє класичної музики.
- 22.Я жалкую, що не відвідав цю виставку.

# 9. Translate into English using 'I wish'.

- 1.Шкода, що я вирішив працювати в цій фірмі.
- 2. Якби він мав час, він поїхав би у відпустку наступного місяця.
- 3. Якби я був обачнішим, я вчора не відповідав би на їхні питання без адвоката.
- 4.Шкода, що ми не пішли до нього на вечірку.
- 5. Якби вона прийшла сюди сьогодні увечері, я б поговорив з нею.

6. Якби ти їх попередив, вони б не зробили цього зараз.

7.Я б хотів бути сильнішим.

8. Якщо він перекладе цю статтю до кінця тижня, він віддасть її редактору.

9. Якби ти міг прожити життя знову, щоб ти робив?

10. Шкода, що він втратив всі свої гроші.

11. Якби ти був молодшим, ти взяв би участь в перегонах.

12. Якби я знав, що я захворію, я б не давав згоди на участь в роботі конференції.

13. Я шкодую, що я не кінозірка.

14. Якби ми запросили няньку, вона б доглядала за нашим малюком.

15. Якби директор прийшов о третій, ми б обговорювали з ним ваші пропозиції вже сьогодні.

# 10. Translate into English using 'I wish'.

1. Якби я був вільним зараз! 2. Шкода, що і вчора у мене було мало часу. 3. Було б добре, якби ви написали їй про це самі. 4. Шкода, що ви не звернули уваги на його попередження. 5. Він пожалкував, що кинув інститут. 6. Шкода, що вже пізно йти туди. 7. Ах, якби я прийшов на вокзал вчасно! 8. Шкода, що ви не читали таку прекрасну книгу. 9. Шкода, що вона робить так багато помилок в мові. 10. Ах, якби ви сказали їй про це минулої неділі! 11. Добре б у нас зараз були канікули. 12. Якби він прийшов сьогодні ввечері! 13. Ми пожалкували, що не спитали його поради. 14. Шкода, що ви відмовились взяти участь в конференції. 15. Шкода, що вас не цікавить цей предмет. 16. Ми б хотіли, щоб ви упам'янули ці факти. 17. Шкода, що ми запізнилися на потяг. 18. Шкода, що ви увімкнули телевізор так пізно. 19. Шкода, що ви не побували на виставці. 20. Шкода, що я дізнався про це так пізно. 21. Шкода, що ви не застали Миколу вдома. 22. Вона жалкувала, що не розповіла нам цю історію ранішею

## 11. Translate into English.

1. Я б хотіла, щоб вона кинула палити.

2. Я б хотів бути льотчиком.

3. Якби вони були тут зразу, ми б зустріли їх.

- 4. Шкода, що вчора йшов сніг.
- 5. Якби він вчора приніс гроші, ми б сьогодні заплатили за новий телевізор.
- 6. Якби вона не залишила вікно відчиненим, вона б почула телефонний дзвінок.
- 7. Шкода, що він такий неприємний.
- 8. Якби ти міг змінити щось в своєму житі, щоб ти змінив?
- 9. Він в Києві. Якби він поїхав, його батьки сказали б нам про це вчора.
- 10. Якщо він не палитиме, він швидко вилікується.
- 11. Шкода, що у мене нема часу на цю роботу.
- 12. Якби вона більше тренувалась перед змаганням, вона б перемогла сьогодні.
- 13. Якби він був на двадцять років старший!
- 14. Якби вона послухала моєї поради, вона б не жалкувала про це зараз.
- 15. Шкода, що я не відповів на цей лист!

# 12. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example. The choice of answer is yours.

SA: Would you rather go on holiday to Spain or Italy?

SB: I'd rather go to Spain than Italy.

- 1 go on holiday to Spain or Italy?
- 2 eat pizza or spaghetti for dinner?
- 4 work in a bank or a school?
- 5 have a dog or a cat as a pet?
- 3 play cards or chess this evening?
- 13. Complete the sentences as in the example.
- 1 I'll cook dinner if you really want me to, but ... I'd rather you cooked it....
- 2 I'll go to the supermarket if you really want me to, but ...
- 3 I'll wash the dishes if you really want me to, but...
- 4 I'll empty the rubbish bin if you really want me to, but...
- 5 I'll iron all the clothes if you really want me to, but...
- 6 I'll clean the bathroom if you really want me to, but...

## 14. Fill in the gaps with would rather, prefers or (would) prefer.

- 1 Do you ... prefer... reading magazines or books?
- 2 She ......go to a disco than go to the theatre.
- 3 Jack .....listening to music to watching television.
- 4 He.....study History than Maths.
- 5 I ..... the piano to the violin.
- 6 ..... you ......to have spaghetti or steak for dinner tonight?
- 7 I ..... see a comedy film than an adventure film.

## 15. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

- 1 A: Did you enjoy the party last night?
  - B: No, I'd rather ... *have stayed*... (stay) at home.
- 2 A: Shall I dust the computer, Tom?
  - B: I'd rather you ..... (not/touch) it, actually. I'll do it myself.
- 3 A: I've got a terrible cold.
  - B: You'd better.....(not/go) to work today, then.
- 4 A: I'm going to work now.

- 5 A: I didn't enjoy Ben's party. I would rather he ..... (invite) more people.B: Oh! I enjoyed it.
- 6 A: You had better .....(study) hard this weekend for the exam on Monday.B: I will, but I would prefer...... (go out) with my friends.
- 7 A: My parents prefer ...... (spend) their holidays in the mountains.B: Do they? I like to be by the sea.
- 8 A: We'd better ...... (not/book) a taxi to bring us home tonight.B: You're right. We might want to stay late.
- 9 A: They're organising a party for Susan's birthday.

6 learn French or German at school?

B: I think it's going to rain today. You'd better ..... (take) your umbrella with you.

# 16. Underline the correct tense.

1. It's about time she *learnt / had learnt* how to cook.

2. I'd rather you *didn't touch / had not touched* my favourite vase. You may break it.

3. If she *heard / had heard* the news, she would have called us by now.

4. They would have opened the door if they *knew / had known* who was there.

5. It's high time they *made / had made* some changes.

6 I wish I saved / had saved some money last month.

7 Ben would have taken up sport earlier if he *realized / had realised* how much fun it was.

8 Tom speaks to everyone as if he *knew / had known* everything.

9 He would rather you *didn't open / hadn't opened* the letter. He wanted to do it himself.

10 Suppose you *met / had met* him, what would you say to him?

11 If only he *called / had called* me last night, we could have gone out.

12 I'd rather Mary *spent / had spent* the night with us. It's snowing too heavily for her to drive home.

13 If you *knew / had known* what she did yesterday, you would be very surprised.

14 Supposing she were seen / had been seen leaving early, what would have happened?

# 17. Study these examples and complete each sentence with two to five words, using the word in bold.

1 If you don't follow the instructions carefully, you may make a mistake.

unless You may make a mistake unless you follow the instructions carefully.

2 If you go near the house, the dog will chase you.

else Don't go near the house or else the dog will chase you.

3 I don't think it's a good idea to go to that party.

were If I were you, I wouldn't go to that party.

4 I want to go on holiday, but I haven't got enough money.

wish I wish I had enough money to go on holiday.

5 Sam wishes he hadn't told Kate about his plans; now everyone knows.

told If Sam hadn't told Kate about his plans, no one would know.

6 You shouldn't borrow any more money; you won't be able to pay it back.better You had better not borrow any more money; you won't be able to pay it back.

7 Helen would prefer to become a teacher rather than become a doctor.

rather Helen would rather become a teacher than become a doctor.

1 You should ask someone to help you with your project.

better You *had better ask* someone to help you with your project.

2 I don't think it's a good idea to invest all your money in stocks.

were If I ..... invest all my money in stocks. 3 I ate too much ice cream and now I don't feel well.

wish I ..... so much ice cream.

4 Tom wishes he hadn't lied to his parents; now they are angry with him.

lied If Tom ..... to his parents, they wouldn't be angry with him.5 If you don't start studying, you'll fail your exams.

else Start studying, ..... your exams.

6 Tina would prefer to eat out rather than cook.

ratherTina...... than cook.

# 18. Choose the correct answer.

1 'Suppose you ...B... some money, what would you do with it?' 'I'd probably go on holiday.' A win B won C would win 2 'I've got Jim's book. Can you give it to him, please?' 'Well, if I ..... him, I'll give it to him.' B saw C see A will see 3 'I have to get up early tomorrow.' 'Then you'd better ..... to bed early tonight.' A be going B to go C go 4 'Can I go out tonight, Mum?' 'I'd rather you ..... at home and did your homework.' C will stay B stay A stayed 5 'It's high time you .....a job, Trevor.' 'I know. I've got an interview next week, actually.' A have got B will get C got 6 'It's getting cold.' 'We'd better ..... our jackets on.' A to put B putting C put

7 'Is Jill coming to the party tonight?' 'Well, if nobody invited her, she ...... to the party.'

A will come B won't come C is coming

8 'Let's have a party this weekend.' I'd rather we ..... it this weekend. I'm busy.' A didn't have B don't have C haven't

9 'I've just passed my driving test.' 'Congratulations. I wish I ...... a car.' A will drive B could drive C can drive

10 'I've lost my keys again, Dad.' 'If you had put them on the table, you ...... them.'<br/>A wouldn't have lost B won't lose C didn't lose

11 'I wish I had more money.' 'Then it's about time you ..... spending everything you earn.'

A will stop B stopped C stop

12 'Suppose you ...... lost, what would you do?' I'd go to a police station.'

A got B will get C would get

13 'I've got a terrible headache.' 'You'd better ..... an aspirin.'

A to take B take C taking

14 'Let's go to the supermarket tonight.' ...... go tonight. I'm very tired.'

A I'd rather not B I'd rather I don't C I'd rather I didn't

15 '.....Belinda should visit you, please tell her I'll see her tonight."Okay, I'll do that.' A Suppose B Supposing C If

## 19. Translate into English.

1. Якби зараз була зима, ми ходили б на лижах. 2. Якби вона подзвонила мені вчора, я принесла б книжку. 3. Коли б у мене був сьогодні вільний час, ми б зіграли в шахи. 4. Ми б читали англійські книжки, якби знали англійську. 5. Якби я був на твоєму місці, я б взяв участь у змаганнях. 6. Якби ви прийшли вчора о 7 годині, ви б застали мене вдома. 7. На вашому місці я б поїхав туди поїздом. 8. Він купив би піаніно в минулому році, якби у нього були гроші. 9. Вони пішли б в кіно сьогодні, якби не готувались до екзамену. 10. Якби не дощ, діти пішли б до річки. 10. Аня продекламувала б цей вірш, якби вона знала його напам'ять. 11. Ми б відправили посилку зараз, але пошта вже зачинена. 12. Я певна, що мій брат допоміг би вам відремонтувати квартиру. 13. Якби не ви, ми заблукали б. 14. Хотілося б, щоб це не було так. 15. Шкода, що ви не взяли участь в шаховому турнірі. 16. Я дуже жалкую, що не можу піти туди. 17. Шкода,що ти не бачив їхньої стінгазети. 18. Хотілося б, щоб вони прийшли завтра. 19. Даремно ви сказали їй про це. 20. На жаль, вона не знає англійської мови. 21. Мені хотілося б, щоб ви обговорили фільм завтра. 22. Прикро, що він не закінчив роботи вчасно. 23. Шкода,що ви запізнилися на потяг. 24. Сьогодні так тепло, ніби вже весна. 25. Наш учитель так добре знає Лондон, наче він там жив. 26. У неї такий вигляд, ніби вона дуже стомлена. 27. Мені здається, ніби я ніколи не бачила такого лісу. 28. Катя така бліда, наче вона була хвора. 29. Її сестра поводиться так, наче вона мала дитина. 30. Він так говорить, ніби нічого не знає про це. 31. Вони так добре знають одне одного, наче провели разом багато років. 32. Він так дивився на мене, начебто збирався щось сказати. 33. Необхідно, щоб всі учні робили зарядку. 34. Дуже важливо, щоб ви прочитали цю статтю. 35. Учитель вимагає, щоб учні відповідали біля столу. 36. Староста запропонував, щоб всі студенти взяли участь у підготовці до вечора. 37. Боюсь, щоб вона не захворіла. 38. Ми встали о шостій ранку, щоб не запізнитися на потяг. 39. Соромно, що ти не відповів на таке легке запитання. 40. Не може бути, щоб вони вже повернулися додому. 41. Дивно, що тебе ніхто не побачив. 42. Якщо ви все ж побачите Ніну, запросіть її прийти на наш вечір.

#### 20. Translate into English.

1. Якби він був розумнішим, він би не пішов вчора до лісу. 2. Якби вона не прислала вчора цього листа, мій брат був би зараз вдома. З. Щоб ми зараз робили, якби мама не спекла пиріг вчора? 4. Шкода, що ви не чули музику Рахманінова. Якби ви її чули, ви б знали, який це чудовий композитор. 5. Я впевнений, що ви були б раді, якби вечірка відбулась. 6. Він так змінився! Якби ви його зустріли, ви б його не впізнали. 7. На вашому місці я б порадився з батьками. 8. Якби зараз підійшов би трамвай, ми б не запізнились. 9. Якби він знав, що це вас засмутить, він був би обережнішим. 10. Якби ви допомогли мені розв'язати цей приклад, я був би дуже вдячним. 11. Шкода, що нам раніше не спало на думку пошукати книгу в бібліотеці. Ми б зробили роботу вчасно і зараз були б вже вільні. 12. Шкода, що у нас було так мало уроків. Якби ми попрацювали більше, ми б краще знали мову. 13. Якби він регулярно не відвідував спортивні тренування, він не досяг би такого успіху на змаганнях. 14. Якби ви попередили мене заздалегідь, я б вже був у Києві. 15. Шкода, що вона вже пішла. Якби ти зателефонував раніше, Вона була б зараз тут. 16. Якби я знав французьку, я б вже давно поговорив з нею. 17. Якби я знав німецьку, я б читав Гете в оригіналі. 18. Якби я мекав близько, я б частіше заходив до вас. 19. Якби ви не перервали нас вчора, ми б закінчили роботу вчасно. 20. Якби він не слідував порадам лікаря, він би не одужав так швидко. 21. Якби він не був талановитим художником, його картину не прийняли б на виставку. 22. Якби ви тоді прислухались до моєї поради, ви не були б зараз в такому становищі. 23. Якби я не був таким зайнятим і ці дні, я б допоміг тобі вчора. 24. Якби він не був таким короткозорим, він. би впізнав мене вчора в театрі. 25. Вона здорова. Якби вона була хвора, її брат сказав би мені про це вчора. 26. Ви б багато знали, якби регулярно читали цей журнал. 27. Якби я знала про це раніше, то не сиділа зараз вдома.

# UNIT 3

## PHRASAL VERBS

## 1. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. War broke \_\_\_\_\_ in 1992 and it lasted until 1995.
- 2. Children are always happy when school breaks \_\_\_\_\_ for the holidays.

3. The burglars broke \_\_\_\_\_ the house in the middle of the night and stole all the jewellery.

- 4. His serious face broke \_\_\_\_\_ a grin when he read the joke.
- 5. The bus broke \_\_\_\_\_, so all the passengers had to get off and wait for another one to r
- 6. The little girl broke \_\_\_\_\_ and cried when her dog died.
- 7. The dog broke \_\_\_\_\_ of the garden and chased the cat down the street.

# 2. Fill in the correct particle.

1. The fire broke \_\_\_\_\_ early this morning and destroyed many buildings in the city centre.

- 2. School breaks \_\_\_\_\_ for the summer on June 18.
- 3. The truck broke \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the motorway and caused a major traffic jam.
- 4. The jewellery shop on Lewis Street has been broken \_\_\_\_\_ three times this year.
- 5. The washing machine is leaking. I hope it doesn't break \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. A fire broke \_\_\_\_\_\_ after the football match yesterday.
- 7. When school broke \_\_\_\_\_ for the Christmas holiday last year, Tom went to Spain.
- 8. Two men wearing masks broke \_\_\_\_\_ Boyd's Bank and stole \$100,000.

# 3. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. War broke \_\_\_\_\_\_ suddenly in the country.
- 2. My flat was broken \_\_\_\_\_ while I was away.
- 3. The washing machine has broken \_\_\_\_\_. I'll call a repairmen.
- 4. The school will break \_\_\_\_\_ for the holidays soon.
- 5. When she heard the bad news she broke \_\_\_\_\_ and cried.
- 6. Several prisoners broke \_\_\_\_\_ of prison early this morning.
- 7. Government negotiations broke \_\_\_\_\_ last week.
- 8. The couple broke \_\_\_\_\_ for a while, but then got back together.
- 9. The secretary broke \_\_\_\_\_ on the meeting to bring us coffee.

## 4. Fill in the gaps with the correct phrasal verb. (with bring)

1. That author \_\_\_\_\_\_ a new mystery novel. (has just published)

2. It's very difficult to \_\_\_\_\_\_ children nowadays. (raise)

3. The changes in the earth's atmosphere \_\_\_\_\_ many changes in the weather. (have caused)

4. They used some cold water to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the patient \_\_\_\_\_. (cause to regain consciousness)

- 5. Matthew \_\_\_\_\_\_ his father \_\_\_\_\_ to his way of thinking. (has persuaded)
- 6. The manager \_\_\_\_\_\_ the subject of redundancy. (raised)

## 5. Fill in the correct particle

- 1. When the noise stopped, she carried \_\_\_\_\_ as if nothing had happened.
- 2. It's difficult to bring \_\_\_\_\_ children alone.
- 3. The heavy rains brought \_\_\_\_\_ severe flooding.
- 4. My favourite singer has just brought \_\_\_\_\_ a new record.
- 5. Paul carried \_\_\_\_\_ his plan very successfully.
- 6. Some excellent ideas were brought \_\_\_\_\_ at the annual meeting.
- 7. Scientists carry \_\_\_\_\_ experiments in their laboratories.
- 8. I'm trying to bring my father \_\_\_\_\_ to my ideas.
- 9. The audience was carried \_\_\_\_\_ by the singer's performance.
- 10. Janet's asthma attack was brought \_\_\_\_\_ by the smoky atmosphere.
- 11. The children carried \_\_\_\_\_ their tasks quickly and quietly.
- 12. Dad brought \_\_\_\_\_ the subject of holidays during dinner last night.

13. The nurse used smelling salts to bring the patient \_\_\_\_\_.

## 6. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. Could you hold \_\_\_\_\_\_ a moment, please? There is someone at the door.
- 2. Martin couldn't hold \_\_\_\_\_ his tears. He was so upset.
- 3. The doctors carried \_\_\_\_\_ tests on the patient.
- 4. Carry \_\_\_\_\_ the exercise until I come back.
- 5. The robbers held \_\_\_\_\_\_ a bank and escaped with lots of money.
- 6. We were held \_\_\_\_\_\_ because there had been a car accident in the city centre.
- 7. You shouldn't hold \_\_\_\_\_ your anger. It will only make you feel worse.
- 8. We were held \_\_\_\_\_ in traffic. That's why we arrived late.
- 9. Our business is holding \_\_\_\_\_ quite well, despite the economic crisis.
- 10. The secretary asked me to hold \_\_\_\_\_ until Mrs Harris was ready to take my call.
- 11. The joke was so funny that Jake couldn't hold \_\_\_\_\_ his laughter.
- 12. You mustn't hold \_\_\_\_\_\_ secrets if there's something I ought to know.
- 13. I think our water supplies will hold \_\_\_\_\_ for another four days.
- 14. Simon held \_\_\_\_\_\_ because he wasn't sure if it was the right thing to do.

15. The demonstrators held \_\_\_\_\_ for three weeks before ending their protest outside the factory.

## 7. Fill in the gaps with the correct phrasal verb (with get)

1. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ very well \_\_\_\_\_ my new neighbours. (get along with)

2. I tried to \_\_\_\_\_\_ all morning but the phone was engaged. (reach sb by telephone)

- 3. I'll go home early tonight if I \_\_\_\_\_\_ all my work. (manage to finish)
- 4. Tom \_\_\_\_\_\_ the bus outside the cinema. (entered)
- 5. The police chased the thieves but they managed to \_\_\_\_\_. (escape)

- 1. He got \_\_\_\_\_ the crime because there were no witnesses.
- 2. After I put down the phone I got \_\_\_\_\_ my work.
- 3. They earn just enough money to get \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4. He's got some problems, but I'm sure he can get \_\_\_\_\_ them.
- 5. I'd love to get \_\_\_\_\_ to an exotic country for a while.
- 6. We get \_\_\_\_\_ our neighbours very well.
- 7. It took Sharon two months to get \_\_\_\_\_ her illness.
- 8. The thieves got \_\_\_\_\_, even though the police had surrounded the building.
- 9. I'll have to get \_\_\_\_\_ work soon I've got lots to do.
- 10. The news of the party got \_\_\_\_\_ the office very quickly.
- 11. I generally get \_\_\_\_\_ my boss, although we disagree sometimes.
- 12. You really must get \_\_\_\_\_ work. The exams start next week!
- 13. The teacher tried to get \_\_\_\_\_ the main ideas of theory to her class without confusing them.
- 14. We have to get \_\_\_\_\_ early to get to London on time.
- 15. I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ ironing those clothes yet. I've been very busy.

# 9. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. The flowers gave \_\_\_\_\_ a nice smell.
- 2. The shop is giving \_\_\_\_\_ free bars of chocolate.
- 3. I told her it was a secret, but she still gave the plan \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. The kidnapper gave himself \_\_\_\_\_ to the police.
- 5. Dan gave \_\_\_\_\_ smoking six months ago.
- 6. You must give the cassette \_\_\_\_\_ to Julia on Saturday.
- 7. The water supplies gave \_\_\_\_\_, so they drank from the stream.
- 8. The fire is giving \_\_\_\_\_ a strange smell. We must get it checked.
- 9. Linda has given \_\_\_\_\_ work so she can look after the children.
- 10. Someone gave \_\_\_\_\_ the secret plans and now the boss is angry.
- 11. The factory gives \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of smoke, causing pollution.
- 12. Although they were losing the match, the team refused to give \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13. When our supplies give \_\_\_\_\_, we'll have to turn back.
- 14. The shop is giving \_\_\_\_\_ free gifts to anyone who spends more than \$ 30.

- 1. They went \_\_\_\_\_ the survey results carefully.
- 2. The price of petrol has gone \_\_\_\_\_ again; the cost of running a car is increasing.
- 3. You must give \_\_\_\_\_ your assignments at the end of the week.
- 4. Let's sit and watch the sun go \_\_\_\_\_ from your balcony.
- 5. The candle went \_\_\_\_\_ when a gust of wind blew through the window.
- 6. Pam isn't in today. She's gone \_\_\_\_\_ the flu.
- 7. When their supplies gave \_\_\_\_\_, the team decided to abandon their trip.
- 8. He has gone \_\_\_\_\_ some difficult periods this year.
- 9. They had a difficult childhood they often had to go \_\_\_\_\_ things they needed.
- 10. Please could you go \_\_\_\_\_ what you said again?
- 11. My alarm went \_\_\_\_\_ at 6 o'clock this morning.
- 12. The fraud team are going \_\_\_\_\_ the matter thoroughly.
- 13. Robert has decided to go \_\_\_\_\_ his plan to change jobs this year.
- 14. Things are going \_\_\_\_\_ fine at the moment. There are no problems.

15. House prices are going \_\_\_\_\_, which is good news for buyers.

# 11. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. They decided to go \_\_\_\_\_ walking even though they were tired.
- 2. I'm afraid the milk has gone \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. The dog went \_\_\_\_\_ the sheep.
- 4. Sam decided to go \_\_\_\_\_ the poetry competition.
- 5. We watched the fire go \_\_\_\_\_, then went to bed.
- 6. The thieves went \_\_\_\_\_ every desk in the office.
- 7. What is going \_\_\_\_\_ here?
- 8. Long skirts went \_\_\_\_\_ in the 60's.

# 12. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. The alarm goes \_\_\_\_\_\_ every morning at 7 o'clock.
- 2. The price of first-class stamps has gone \_\_\_\_\_ again.
- 3. The fire has gone \_\_\_\_\_. Would you like me to light it again?
- 4. What's going \_\_\_\_\_ there? There's a huge crowd.
- 5. Go \_\_\_\_\_ the contract very carefully before you sign it.
- 6. The cheese I bought last week is mouldy. It must have gone \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. Although she had a headache, she went \_\_\_\_\_ playing with her son.
- 8. Lots of people go \_\_\_\_\_ the cooking competition every year.
- 9. A bomb went \_\_\_\_\_ in the city centre last weekend. Fortunately, no one was seriously injured.
- 10. She went \_\_\_\_\_\_ a difficult time last winter when she lost her job.

# 13. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. The police are looking \_\_\_\_\_ a series of robberies.
- 2. She looked \_\_\_\_\_\_ the TV guide to see if there was a good film on.
- 3. You can look \_\_\_\_\_\_ the meaning of words in a dictionary.
- 4. My mum is looking \_\_\_\_\_ my dog while I am on holiday.
- 5. I'm looking \_\_\_\_\_ the party next weekend.
- 6. Sam spent half an hour looking \_\_\_\_\_ his keys.
- 7. Look \_\_\_\_\_ jellyfish when you swim in the sea.
- 8. They looked \_\_\_\_\_\_ the village before setting off down the mountain.
- 9. Nurses look \_\_\_\_\_ patients in hospital.
- 10. Look \_\_\_\_\_\_ the turning, I don't want to miss it.
- 11. He looks \_\_\_\_\_ people who are less privileged.
- 12. Julie looked \_\_\_\_\_ the book quickly in the shop before she bought it.
- 13. I looked \_\_\_\_\_ your telephone number in the telephone book.
- 14. This school is looked \_\_\_\_\_ as being one of the best in the area.
- 15. The doctor looked \_\_\_\_\_\_ the patient carefully before giving his diagnose.

- 1. If you're not sure how to spell the word, look it \_\_\_\_\_ in the dictionary.
- 2. Who's going to look \_\_\_\_\_ the dog while you're on holiday?

- 3. I can't wait for the camping trip, I'm really looking \_\_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 4. Tracy has lost her keys. She's been looking \_\_\_\_\_ them all morning.
- 5. When we were young, my grandmother used to look \_\_\_\_\_ us at the weekends.
- 6. "Excuse me. I'm looking \_\_\_\_\_ Mount Street. Could you tell me where it is?"
- 7. A: How can we find Liz's address?
  - B: Let's look it \_\_\_\_\_ in the telephone book.
- 8. A: Don't you have a dentist's appointment on Monday?
  - B: Yes, and I'm not looking \_\_\_\_\_ it at all!

# 15. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. We often argue, but we always make \_\_\_\_\_ quickly.
- 2. He made \_\_\_\_\_\_ a story about having to work late, but I knew he was lying.
- 3. It was dark and peter couldn't make \_\_\_\_\_ the sign.
- 4. I can't make \_\_\_\_\_ my mind about which shirt to buy for Chris.
- 5. When the children were dressed and made \_\_\_\_\_ for the party, they looked fantastic.
- 6. The actress made herself \_\_\_\_\_ before she went on stage.
- 7. Two members of staff and eight parents make \_\_\_\_\_ the school committee.
- 8. What does this word say? I can't make \_\_\_\_\_ the handwriting.
- 9. The shoplifter was making \_\_\_\_\_\_ the door when the security guard stopped him.
- 10. They gave him a free meal to make \_\_\_\_\_ the bad service he received.
- 11. I'll make \_\_\_\_\_ the cheque to you, shall I?
- 12. Clive made \_\_\_\_\_ an excuse for his being late.
- 13. The man made \_\_\_\_\_ with cash from the till, but was caught by the police a short time later.
- 14. Please lend me your car this weekend. I'll make it \_\_\_\_\_ you later, I promise.
- 15. They had an argument yesterday, but I think they've made \_\_\_\_\_ now.

# 16. Fill in the gaps with the correct phrasal verb (with put).

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ all your suggestions on paper and we'll discuss them. (write)
- 2. It took the firemen three hours to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the fire. (extinguish)
- 3. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ my new dress, but it was too big for me. (dressed myself in)
- 4. Nick will \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_ for the night. (provided a place to stay)

5. Sue looks better now that she is \_\_\_\_\_\_ a bit of weight. (has increased in weight)

6. Mike \_\_\_\_\_\_ that idea that they should have a Halloween party. (proposed)

7. I phoned the company, but the receptionist said she couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ to the director because the line was busy. (connect by phone)

8. We had to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the wedding until next year. (postpone)

- 1. There were no casualties as firefighters managed to put \_\_\_\_\_ the fire quickly.
- 2. She didn't put \_\_\_\_\_ her jacket as it wasn't cold outside.
- 3. My brother came to visit me and I put him \_\_\_\_\_ for the night.
- 4. Due to the storm, I put \_\_\_\_\_ my doctor's appointment until the following week.
- 5. It's past your bedtime! Put \_\_\_\_\_ your pyjamas and go to bed!

6. Jenny was too scared to stay home alone while her sister was away, so her friend put her \_\_\_\_\_ for a week.

- 7. Don't forget to put \_\_\_\_\_ the fire before you go to bed.
- 8. Our monthly meeting has been put \_\_\_\_\_ until next Wednesday.
- 9. Put your ideas \_\_\_\_\_ on paper and I'll look at them later.
- 10. I'll put you \_\_\_\_\_ to the correct department, madam.

## 18. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. He ran \_\_\_\_\_ an old school friend at a party.
- 2. Richard was run \_\_\_\_\_ by a car and taken to hospital.
- 3. We ran \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of problems at the beginning of our project.
- 4. Oh no! We've run \_\_\_\_\_ of coffee again.
- 5. He refused to listen to her as she ran \_\_\_\_\_ his friends.
- 6. I ran \_\_\_\_\_ this book as I was cleaning out the attic.
- 7. Tim decided to run \_\_\_\_\_ from the horrible boarding school.
- 8. I ran \_\_\_\_\_ an old teacher of mine last weekend at the supermarket.
- 9. Be careful crossing that road. I don't want you to get run \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. The bath water ran \_\_\_\_\_ because Dean forgot to turn off the taps.
- 11. Henry ran \_\_\_\_\_ a huge telephone bill and then he couldn't afford to pay it.
- 12. You'll never guess what I ran \_\_\_\_\_ at a car boot sale yesterday.
- 13. The actor ran \_\_\_\_\_ his lines once more on the night of the opening performance.
- 14. One of the employees ran \_\_\_\_\_ the money from the till.
- 15. We've run \_\_\_\_\_ milk again. I'll go and buy some more.

# 19. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. A: What do you need from the shop?
  - B: Well, we've run \_\_\_\_\_ eggs, so get a dozen.
- 2. A: What happened to Sam's bicycle? It's in pieces!
  - B: It was run \_\_\_\_\_ by a bus yesterday.
- 3. Mike threw the ball and the dog ran \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 4. A: Have you heard the news? Billy's in town.
  - B: Yes, I know. I ran \_\_\_\_\_ him this morning.
- 5. The car turned the corner, lost control and ran \_\_\_\_\_ a dog.
- 6. I can't do any more sit-ups. I've run \_\_\_\_\_ energy.
- 7. The policeman ran \_\_\_\_\_\_ the burglar for five minutes before he finally caught him.
- 8. I ran \_\_\_\_\_ an old school friend who I hadn't seen for ten years.

## 20. Fill in the gaps with the correct phrasal verb (with fall)

- 1. If you don't study you will \_\_\_\_\_\_ your school work. (fail to keep out with)
- 2. Our plans for the picnic \_\_\_\_\_\_ because of the bad weather. (failed to happen)

3. It would be easy to \_\_\_\_\_\_ someone as handsome as Mel Gibson. (become strongly attracted to)

- 4. Tom hates \_\_\_\_\_\_ with his best friend. (quarrelling)
- 5. He was so convincing that she \_\_\_\_\_ his lies. (was deceived by)
- 6. I will \_\_\_\_\_\_ whatever you decide. (agree)

## 21. Fill in the correct particle.

- This book is so old that it's falling \_\_\_\_\_.
   I think Kate and Peter have fallen \_\_\_\_\_. They aren't speaking to each other.
- 3. The slowest runner fell \_\_\_\_\_ very quickly after the race had started.
- 4. Mike was so handsome and charming that Sarah fell \_\_\_\_\_ him immediately.
- 5. Lots of people fell the conman's tricks before he was caught by the police.
- 6. Despite months of preparation, their plans fell \_\_\_\_\_ at the last minute.
- 7. If you fall \_\_\_\_\_ with the payments, we may take legal action.
- 8. You can always fall your skills as a teacher if you don't make it as an artist.
- 9. I'll fall whatever you plan for the weekend.

## 22. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. My father set \_\_\_\_\_ his business in 1978.
- 2. As they set \_\_\_\_\_ for their picnic, it started to rain.
- 3. Luke was happy. He had done what he set \_\_\_\_\_\_ to do.
- 4. We'll set \_\_\_\_\_ early to avoid the traffic.
- 5. The police had set \_\_\_\_\_ roadblocks to prevent the criminals leaving the area.
- 6. If I set \_\_\_\_\_\_ ten pounds every week I will be able to afford a holiday next year.
- 7. The problems set us , so we didn't finish the project till the following March.

## 23. Fill in the gaps with the correct phrasal verb (with stand).

- 1. It takes courage to \_\_\_\_\_\_ a bully. (defend yourself against)
- 2. That group \_\_\_\_\_\_ animal rights. (represents)
- 3. I know that my parents \_\_\_\_\_\_ always \_\_\_\_\_ me. (will support me in a difficult situation)
- 4. Claire \_\_\_\_\_ me while I was on holiday. (replaced me temporarily)
- 5. The children \_\_\_\_\_\_ when their teacher enters the room. (rise to their feet)

- 1. The dentist took \_\_\_\_\_ one of my teeth last month.
- 2. Tom set \_\_\_\_\_ on his voyage, full of excitement.
- 3 Michael takes....his mother. They've both got brown hair and green eyes.
- 4 lan's wife stood ... him when he lost his job two months ago.
- 5 Once the cold weather sets, we'll be glad of the fire in the living room.
- 6 Lesley's business is really taking She's had lots of orders.
- 7 The chef set.....some strawberries to put on top of the cake.
- 8 The letters UN stand..United Nations.
- 9 I have decided to take .. aerobics because I want to get fit.
- 10 I'm sorry. I take ... everything I said about this restaurant. The meal was delicious.
- 11 The group set ..... on their journey, wondering what adventures lay ahead.
- 12 Of all the essays, that one stands because it is very well-written.
- 13 The teacher took... the boy's football and put it in the cupboard.
- 14 No one was taken ... by her clever lies.
- 15 He stood me ..... last night, so I'm very angry with him.
- 16 By the end of the day, Jack had done everything he set ..... to do.

- 17 You ought to stand ...your boss. I'm sure he will respect you for it.
- 18 I took him .... his dinner invitation, and we went to a lovely restaurant.

19 When their camping trip was over, the girls took ...... their tent and put it away carefully.

- 20 The factory is taking.. more employees at the moment.
- 21 Work takes..... most of my time these days.
- 22 Amanda has recently set ..... her own accountancy business.
- 23 I bought this skirt but it's too wide. Could you take it ...... a little bit, please?
- 24 My husband took me.. for a meal last night to celebrate our anniversary.
- 25 I took.....my jacket and hung it in the wardrobe.
- 26 You ought to stand .. yourself. Don't let anyone intimidate you.
- 27 The company is being taken by a very large firm.
- 28 I'm taking some time.. next month. I need a holiday.
- 29 Jenny hasn't really taken . her new school. She's not at all happy.
- 30 Alex was taken... when he heard the news.
- 31 I offered to stand .... Emily yesterday, because she was ill.
- 32 If you've finished lunch, I'll take your plate ...
- 33 The plane sped along the runway and took .....

# 25. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. I'm going to take my parents \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.
- 2. Find some paper and take \_\_\_\_\_ these details.
- 3. Sarah took \_\_\_\_\_ jogging in order to lose weight.
- 4. Norman takes \_\_\_\_\_ his father in appearance.
- 5. As the plane took \_\_\_\_\_, all the lights went out.
- 6. The new manager will take \_\_\_\_\_ next week.
- 7. Charlie took \_\_\_\_\_ his coat and sat down.
- 8. The dustmen are coming to take \_\_\_\_\_ the rubbish.

# 26. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. My doctor advised me to take \_\_\_\_\_ a sport to help me lose weight.
- 2. Michael is very tidy. In that way, he takes \_\_\_\_\_ his father.
- 3. You should check in two hours before your flight is scheduled to take \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. Unfortunately, many small firms are taken \_\_\_\_\_ by larger ones.
- 5. My husband has beautiful blue eyes. I hope our children will take \_\_\_\_\_him.
- 6. Little Tammy loves dancing and wants to take \_\_\_\_\_ ballet.
- 7. Despite the bad weather, our flight to Chicago still took \_\_\_\_\_ on time.
- 8. While we were sailing my father let me take \_\_\_\_\_ the wheel so he could rest.

## 27. Fill in the gaps with the correct phrasal verb (with turn)

- 1. I \_\_\_\_\_ my parents in times of trouble. (go to for help)
- 2. I waited for an hour, but nobody \_\_\_\_\_. (arrived)
- 3. Jim invited me to dinner, but I had to \_\_\_\_\_ him. (refuse his invitation)
- 4. This company \_\_\_\_\_\_ the best equipment on the market. (produces)
- 5. She \_\_\_\_\_\_ the lights and saw her husband asleep. (switched on)

6. He is working as a waiter until a better job \_\_\_\_\_. (arises)

7. Jim \_\_\_\_\_\_ the volume \_\_\_\_\_ so he could listen to the news. (increased)

8. It's hot! Can you \_\_\_\_\_ the heating? (reduce)

# 28. Fill in the correct particle.

- 1. I had to turn \_\_\_\_\_ Fred's invitation to his party as I'll be out of town that evening.
- 2. In the famous comic strip, Clark Kent turns \_\_\_\_\_ Superman in a phone booth.
- 3. You'll never guess who turned \_\_\_\_\_\_ at Chris' barbecue yesterday!
- 4. Could you turn \_\_\_\_\_ the air conditioning, please? It's very hot in here.
- 5. When the princess kissed the ugly frog, he turned \_\_\_\_\_\_ a handsome prince.
- 6. Vanessa turned \_\_\_\_\_\_ the answering machine before she left the house.

7. James was offered the job, but he turned it \_\_\_\_\_ because the salary wasn't very high.

8. Unfortunately, we turned \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the restaurant just as it was closing.

9. We turned ...... the heater because the room was cold.

- 10. The policeman asked him to turn .. his pockets so he could examine the contents.
- 11. They turned ... the burglar to the police when they caught him in their house.
- 12. I've got a problem and I don't know who to turn ...... for help.
- 13. Anna was offered the job, but she turned it ......
- 14. It turned . to be the wrong road, so we had no idea where we were.
- 15. I can't hear the news. Please turn ..... the volume on the TV.
- 16. Our neighbours have turned their garage..... a study.
- 17. Sam turned ...... on the doorstep at midnight in the pouring rain.
- 18. The old lady turned the thief she had caught to the police.
- 19. We turn ...... about ten thousand of these cars every month.

20. The family were turned .of their flat by the landlord when they couldn't pay the rent.

21. That music is very loud. Could you turn the volume ...... please?

- 22. The children were turned from the cinema because there were no tickets left.
- 23. Turn ..... the page and look at exercise ten.
- 24. If you're no longer watching TV, why don't you turn it .....?

- 1. The police were called \_\_\_\_\_\_ after the burglary was discovered.
- 2. Owning a pet calls \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of responsibility.
- 3. They called \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting because the manager couldn't attend.
- 4. Emma called \_\_\_\_\_ for help when she fell and hurt the leg.
- 5. Brian called \_\_\_\_\_ on his way home from work.
- 6. Mother called the children \_\_\_\_\_, saying it was time to go home.
- 7. I'm busy now, so I'll call you \_\_\_\_\_ later.
- 8. This job calls \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge of foreign language.
- 9. When their son was ill, they called \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor.
- 10. Having fallen in the river, the woman called \_\_\_\_\_ for help.
- 11. The football match was called \_\_\_\_\_ due to bad weather.

## 30. Choose the correct item.

1. Harry said he wasn't coming to the picnic but he turned at the last minute.
A on B into C up
2. A: Why are you going to the post office?
B: Because I've runof stamps.
A into B out C over
3. Our flight was delayed, so the airline company put us in a hotel for the night.
A out B up C off
4. A fight broke just as we were leaving the match.
A out B down C into
5. My father's greengrocer's shop was taken by a large supermarket.
A off B after C over
6. As Michelle was surfing the net, she came an interesting website on
prehistoric animals.
A into B across C round
7. I am lookingto hearing from you soon.
A after B up C forward
8. Passengers are not allowed to use their mobile phones while the plane is taking
A off B after C over
9. Steve ran my skateboard with his motorcycle.
A after B out of C over
10. We put our camping trip because Joyce wasn't feeling well.
A off B out C on

## 31. Fill in the gaps with the particles in the list below.

round, after, up, into, on, down, back

- 1. I have arranged for a babysitter to look \_\_\_\_\_ the children on Friday night so we can go out.
- 2. You'll never guess who's conning \_\_\_\_\_ tonight!
- 3. Mr Stevens was turned \_\_\_\_\_ for the position because he didn't have any computer skills.
- 4. Mrs Stanley will call you when she comes \_\_\_\_\_ from Seattle.
- 5. Randy, who loves extreme sports, has taken \_\_\_\_\_\_ skydiving.
- 6. A: Do you know when the telescope was invented?
- B: No, but we can always look it \_\_\_\_\_ in the encyclopedia.
- 7. I can't make a copy of this document because the photocopier has broken \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. Why don't you turn \_\_\_\_\_ the kettle and I'll prepare the sandwiches.
- 9. We had to break \_\_\_\_\_ our house because we had lost our keys.
- 10. The magician clapped his hand and immediately the flowers turned \_\_\_\_\_ a rabbit.

## 32. Complete each sentence with two to five words, including the word in bold.

1. With her gorgeous blue eyes, she really looks like her mother.

takes With her gorgeous blue eyes, she really \_\_\_\_\_\_ her mother.

2. Joe met his ex-boss at the conference today.	
into Joe at the conference to	oday.
3. The puppy was digging holes in the garden, trying to find the bone he had burie	ed.
looking The puppy was digging holes in the garden	
he had buried.	
4. When you go camping, always remember to stop the camp fire from burning b	before
you go to sleep.	
out When you go camping, always remember to	
before you go to sleep.	
5. "Why didn't the security guard chase the thief?"	
run "Why didn't the security th	ief?"
6. Samantha inherited an enormous amount of money when her aunt died last ye	ar.
came Samantha of money when he	r aunt
died last year.	
7. It was such a cold day that I wore my woollen hat and gloves.	
on It was such a cold day that I	and
gloves.	
8. Do you know when school stops for Easter?	
up   Do you know when Easter	er?
9. Cathy's application wasn't accepted because she had very little experience.	
turned Cathy's application had	d very
little experience.	

## 33. Underline the correct word.

1 A: Who's going to *look after/run after* Scruffy when you're away? B: My Mum is.

2 A fire *put out/broke out* in the west wing of the library late last night.

3 Kate decided to *take up/look up* Italian lessons because she wants to live in Venice one day.

- 4 Caterpillars *come into/turn into* butterflies in the summer.
- 5 A: How is your cousin's bookshop doing?

B: Badly, I'm afraid. It was *taken over/run over* by a bigger company.

- 6 "Turn on/Put on your sun hat if you're going to the beach," Mum said to me.
- 7 We've put off/taken off our dinner party until we've finished redecorating the house.
- 8 The train *turned down/broke down* in the middle of the mountains.
- 9 It was so kind of your parents to *break up/put up* my brother for the weekend.

10 "Did you hear what happened to Mr Wilson? His house was run into/broken into yesterday."

# 34. Use the phrasal verbs below in the correct tense to fill in the blanks.

come round, not run out of, come across, look forward to, look for, come back, take

after

# Dear Cindy,

Sorry I haven't written to you for so long but I had lost your new address. In fact, I 1)

it for more than a month before I finally 2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ it.

I hope everything's OK and you 3) \_\_\_\_\_\_ energy with all those trips you have been going on. Things are a bit crazy here as we're trying to finish redecorating the house because Susie 4) \_\_\_\_\_\_ from hospital with her new baby, Nicholas, on Tuesday.

Everybody thinks he 5) \_\_\_\_\_ his mother because he's got dark eyes and a very pale complexion. Well, you'll tell us what you think when you 6) \_\_\_\_\_ to see him.'

As you can imagine, little Nicholas is all we talk about these days. Anyway, write back soon. I 7) \_\_\_\_\_\_ hearing from you.

Love, Anne

#### 35. Match column A to Column B.

Α	В
1 What time does	A look it up in the encyclopedia.
2 They bought a lovely house	B if a fire breaks out.
3 If you need more information on	C because the weather was bad.
Napoleon	D the plane to Hong Kong take off?
4 You are very lucky that you weren't	E when they ran into their grandfather.
5 All students should know what to do	F she never turned up for their meeting.
6 We had to put off the tennis tournament	G with the money they came into last
7 The children were on their way to	year.
school	H run over by the lorry!
8 He waited and waited but	

### 36. Fill in the blanks with the correct verb to complete the sentences.

1	I'll make a chocolate cake if you on the oven.
2	John's coming home next week as his school is up for the holidays.
3	"Did you hear that Allen down Emily's invitation to her Christmas party?"
4	The Carltons' dog has run away. They've been for him all night.
5	When I was on holiday in Mexico, I into my old school teacher.
6	A: Does this dishwasher have a guarantee?
	B: Of course. If it down within the next twelve months, we'll
	repair it free of charge.
7	A: Mum, what do firefighters do?
	B: Well, they do many things. They out fires, rescue people and save
ar	nimals.
8	I across a gorgeous antique lamp at the local bazaar.
9	A: Let's have a barbecue tonight.
	B: Good idea! But we'll have to go to the shop because we've out of
cł	narcoal.
1(	A: Now that it's the summer holidays, what are you going to do with your free time?
	B: Well, I've decided to up cycling.
1	A: You don't need to stay in a hotel. We'llyou up for the night.
	B: Thanks very much. I really appreciate it.

UNIT 4

## PREPOSITIONS

## PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE AND MOVEMENT

#### 1. Fill in the gaps with at, in or on.

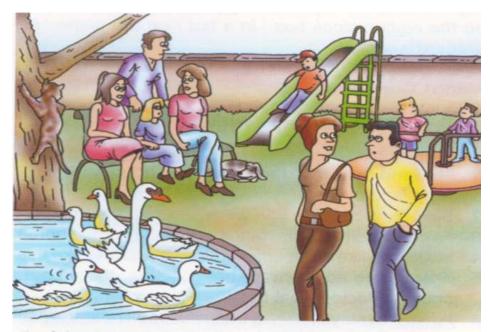
- 1 I have to be <u>...at...</u> the airport two hours before my flight leaves.
- 2 Simon called while you werethe theatre.
- 3 I went to visit Joanne, but she wasn't home.
- 4 I wouldn't like to be . sea in weather like this.
- 5 There were so many dishes .. the menu, I couldn't decide what to have.
- 6 I'd love to stay.. a beautiful hotel near the sea.
- 7 I got several autographs.. the rock concert.
- 8 Jason is..... hospital with a broken leg.
- 9 Mum, can I stay Sarah's house tonight, please?
- 10 The weather..... Ireland is often cold and wet.
- 11 My grandparents live .. a farm and we often visit them there.
- 12 She waited ..... the platform to see the train come in.
- 13 I get off the train .... Baker Street and then walk to work.
- 14 It must be wonderful to live ... an island, surrounded by water.
- 15 What did you learn... school today?
- 16 Suki is the girl sitting ...my left.
- 17 Tony is..... the dentist's having a tooth taken out.
- 18 After dinner, Grandad fell asleep ..... his armchair.
- 19 I lived ...... India until I was twelve years old.

# 2. Fill in the gaps with at or in and one of the places from the list.

the cafe, the theatre, the park, the police station, the garage, the library

- 1 My car broke down on the way to work. I've left it <u>at the garage</u> to be repaired.
- 2 I fell asleep ..... today as I haven't been sleeping so well lately.
- 3 Jackie loves watching plays. She is ..... now, watching 'Romeo and Juliet'.
- 4 Tony was buying a coffee when it started to rain. He waited ..... until the rain stopped.
- 5 The man who stole Jane's handbag has been found. He is being questioned .....
- 6 I hate it when people leave their rubbish .....; it looks so ugly.

### 3. Look at the picture and fill in the gaps with a suitable preposition from the list. behind, among, down, round, between, up, in, under, towards, on



- 1 A boy is going ...down... the slide.
- 2 Two women are sitting ... the bench. A girl is sitting them.
- 3 Two children are going ..... on the roundabout.
- 4 A cat is climbing ..... the tree.
- 5 There is a dog ..... the bench.
- 6 There is a pond ..... the park.
- 7 There is a swan ..... the ducks.
- 8 A man and a woman are walking ...... the pond.
- 9 There is a man standing..... the bench.
- 10 There are some ducks ..... the pond.

### 4. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1 The children climbed *under/over* the wall to escape from the angry gardener.
- 2 She walked quickly *past/along* the shops without looking in the windows.
- 3 The current is very strong. It would be dangerous to swim *through/across* this river.
- 4 She got dressed quickly and ran up/down the stairs to the kitchen.
- 5 Fiona is going to come to the party *by/in* her car.
- 6 I saw a man walking *from/towards* me smiling, but I didn't recognise him.
- 7 We tried to push our way *through/towards* the crowds to see our favourite singer.
- 8 There was no way to cross the lake, so we had to walk *through/round* it.
- 9 The boy got *over/out* of bed and went to the window.
- 10 I put the bags onto/into the table, then I put the shopping away.
- 11 You will see the post office on your right when you go through/round the corner.
- 12 She looked *along/into* her crystal ball and told the girl her fortune.

### 5. Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.

- 1 There is a man standing ...*at*... the entrance to the museum.
- 2 There was a note ...... the top of the page I was reading which I couldn't understand.
- 3 The phone rang ......the middle of the night, waking everyone in the house.
- 4 It's very tiring to spend eight hours checking information ...... a computer screen.

- 5 Yesterday was a lovely day and we could see children playing ...... the beach.
- 6 I can't find the place you're talking about ...... I the map.
- 7 There's a new shop ..... the corner of the street.
- 8 Jenny is coming the six o'clock bus. I'm meeting her ..... the bus station.
- 6. Fill in the gaps with opposite, in, on, under, over, next to, in front of or between.



Mrs Shaw has a beautiful living room. There is a large fireplace 1) **...between...** two lamps. 2) ...... the fireplace there is a bronze plate. 3)..... the fireplace there is a low table with a plat 4) ..... it. There is a colourful rug 5) ..... the table. 6) ..... the long sofa there is a comfortable armchair. There is another table 7) ..... the armchair. There is a fire 8) ..... the fireplace, so the room is nice and warm.

7. Look at the picture and fill in the gaps with a suitable preposition from the list. out of, along, below, across, above, at, past, from ... to, against, outside



1 There is a man waiting ...*at*... the bus stop.

2 The bus is going....London .....Manchester.

post
lamp-
e
post

## 8. Underline the correct preposition.

1 Put the table *among/<u>between</u>* the sofa and the TV, please.

2 Mum keeps the saucepans over/in the cupboard above/towards the cooker.

3 I've already put clean sheets *on/above* your bed.

4 Someone hid the newspaper *in/under* the armchair.

5 Spending too much time *on/in front of* the TV is bad for your eyes.

6 Dinner's ready. We can all sit *to/at* the table.

7 I always end up sitting *behind/between* tall people at the cinema. That's why I can never enjoy the film.

8 There's a newsagent's *in/on* the corner of Lowther Street and Simpson Road.

9 My school is *near/through* my house. It only takes five minutes to walk there.

10The train from England to France goes *across/ through* the Channel Tunnel.

## 9. Fill in the correct preposition.

*A* This morning I heard a knock 1) ... *on*... the door. When I went to look, someone had pushed an envelope 2) \_\_\_\_\_ the letterbox. I opened it to see what was 3)

\_\_\_\_\_it. There was a birthday card from my friend.

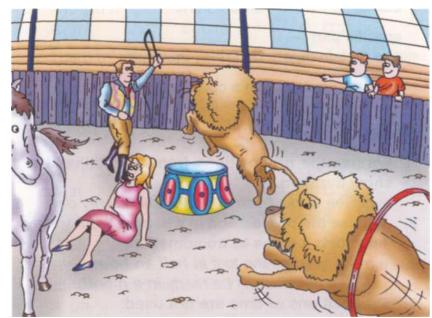
**B** Tom enjoys going 1) \_\_\_\_\_ the airport. He loves standing 2) \_\_\_\_\_ the window, watching the planes taking off and landing. He would love to travel 3) \_\_\_\_\_ a plane.

C Susan was standing 1) \_\_\_\_\_ the street when the bus came 2) \_\_\_\_\_ the corner. The driver drove 3) \_\_\_\_\_ a puddle and Susan was covered in water!

*D* While Terry was tidying his bedroom yesterday he looked 1) \_\_\_\_\_ the bed and found his favourite toy. He put it 2) \_\_\_\_\_ the toy box which was 3) \_\_\_\_\_ the wardrobe and the desk.

E I sit 1) \_\_\_\_\_ my desk every afternoon. I keep all my papers 2) \_\_\_\_\_ the drawers, along with some pens. Hanging from the ceiling 3) \_\_\_\_\_ the desk is a very bright light. The chair that I sit 4) \_\_\_\_\_ is soft and comfortable.

# **10.** Look at the picture and fill in the gaps with a suitable preposition from the list. off, through, onto, opposite, next to, in



- 1 A lion is jumping ... onto... the trapezium.
- 2 A woman has fallen .....the horse.
- 3 There are two children standing .... each other.
- 4 The lion is jumping ..... the hoop.
- 5 The lion-tamer is standing ......the lion.
- 6 The lion-tamer has a whip ...... his hand.

### 11. Fill in the blanks.

1. The helicopter is ... the city. 2. The sun is... the sky. 3. The sky... us is blue. 4. The river flows ... the bridge. 5. The temperature today is five degrees ... zero. 6. There was a short street... the two buildings. 7. The bench was in the back of the garden,... the trees. 8. John was ... the street waiting for the bus. 9. They decided to have a rest... a big tree ... the side of the road. 10. He thought that it was a good idea to place a table... the two windows. 11... the roof of the building they could see for miles around. 12. The birds were singing cheerfully... his head in the tree. 13. The crowd was ... the entrance waiting for the news. 14. He was wandering ... the houses for an hour or so but he just could not find the right one. 15, The shop was on the ground floor, right... his apartment. 16. The title was written in capital letters ... the names of the authors. 17. The full moon was rising ... the valley. 18. They were warned of the dangers of flying... high mountains, 19.1 was sure that the noise was... me. 20. At dinner he was placed ... Jane and Dave. 21. There was no bridge ... the river. 22. Try to avoid having a carpet... the dining table. 23. The hotel is just a couple of blocks... the road. 24. The night covered the city and the first star appeared ... the sky.

### 12. Translate into English.

1. Човен повільно пропливав під мостом. 2. Дорога проходила поміж двох озер, а потім повертала праворуч. 3. Багато століть тому ця місцевість була значно нижче рівня моря. 4. Сонце яскраво сяяло в небі, погода була просто чудова. 5. Будинок Джейн був розташований в глибині подвір'я, між старими деревами. 6. Джулія оселилася в кімнаті наді мною. 7. Не давайте температурі в кімнаті

опускатися нижче 20 градусів. 8. Вона поклала подушку йому під голову. 9. Внизу, біля підніжжя скелі, протікала річка. 10. Коли літак летів над океаном, пасажирам показували фільм. 11. Він розірвав лист і кинув його до корзини. 12. Із свого вікна він бачив будівлю музею, що знаходилася вище по вулиці. 13. Температура різко підіймалася вище нуля минулого тижня. 14. Через кілька днів діти повернулися, щоб знову погратися в печері між скель. 15. Вона з жахом помітила, що на руці нижче ліктя з'явився синець. 16. Друзі помахали йому рукою, коли він був вже внизу біля річки. 17. Пес мирно спав під столом. 18. За годину вони доїхали до кордону між Німеччиною та Францією. 19. Туристи повісили чайник з водою над вогнем. 20. Кішка сховалася між старими ящиками. 21. Далі угору річкою більше не було великих сіл. 22. Дощ скінчився, і над лісом з'явилася веселка. 23. На шляху від Чикаго до Індіанаполісу багато заправних станцій. 24. Ця тварина живе глибоко під землею. 25. Мати схилилася над дитиною і поцілувала її. 26. Прочитавши абзац, він написав свій коментар прямо під ним. 27. Його кімната далі коридором. 28. США розташовані між Канадою та Мексикою. 29. Унизу у вітальні Джон писав твір. 30. Тунель під Ла-Маншем був переповнений.

#### 13. Fill in the blanks.

1. He had almost fallen ... his stool laughing. 2. We went... the street... the stables. 3. Blood was streaming ... the wound. 4. The river runs ... the ocean. 5. William rode... the longer way home,... the canal bridge. 6. He saw Whiteman walking ... the pier towards his car. 7. Inside that box there was also a picture of her brother, riding .... a dusty mountain track in Morocco. 8. She couldn't make herself do anything useful and was wandering ...room ... room. 9. We went... the street to that restaurant in the Bahnhof. 10. He emptied the rest of the milk ... the sink. 11. The driver was drunk and the car drove ... a tree. 12. He wiped his fingerprints ... the glass. 13. Kate retreated ... the window and dressed. 15. He got... the house through the back door. 16 She listened to the radio driving the car... a lane in East Surrey. 17. Add mustard powder to the washing-up water to get the smell of fish... silver, 18. He drew a finger expressively ... his throat. 19. Tom walked back ... the corridor. 20. It only took him 2 hours to drive home .... Columbus.

### 14. Translate into English.

1. Він вирішив поїхати через центр міста, щоб скоротити дорогу. 2. Джері витерла пил зі столу і взялася наводити порядок у шухлядах. 3. Вони йшли вулицею, сперечаючись про те, як краще діяти. 4. Коли він зайшов до офісу, всі вже працювали. 5. Збігаючи вниз сходами, Ліз згадала, що забула вимкнути праску. 6. Безперечно, ідея переїзду з Джорджтауна до великого міста всім сподобалася. 7. Він зняв капелюха з полиці і приміряв - виглядало непогано. 8. Слово "прем'єра" було надруковане великими літерами через увесь аркуш. 9. Дивлячись у вікно, вона побачила, як надворі граються діти. 10. Рухаючись уздовж стіни, він сподівався, що зможе прокрастися до саду непоміченим. 11. Джейн так нервувала, що навіть була не в змозі налити молоко з пляшки в чашку. 12. По її щоках текли сльози. 13. Вона змила з обличчя макіяж і пішла спати. 14.

Джеф заглянув у шафу, але там не було нічого, що йому хотілося б вдягнути. 15. Він дістав з кишені годинник і подивився на нього, було вже пів на четверту. 16. Він їхав вниз схилом пагорба, з цікавістю озираючись на всі боки. 17. Минулого літа вони разом з експедицією проїхали через усю Африку. 18. Вона провела їх вузьким коридором і зупинилася біля останніх дверей коло вікна. 19. За годину дерево все ж таки прибрали з дороги. 20. Робота вимагала, щоб він часто переїздив з одного міста до іншого.

## **PREPOSITIONS OF TIME**

1.	Fill in the gaps with in, at, on and one of the phrases from the list.
	the weekend, the morning, 1066, Easter Tuesdays, prehistoric times, ten minutes, m
	birthday, the moment, lunchtime, eight o'clock the 60's
1	My favourite programme starts at eight o'clock., every Wednesday night.
2	I'm having a party I' ll be twenty-five years old.
3	I'm going to bed. I have to get up early
4	, we eat chocolate eggs to symbolise new life.
5	William of Normandy conquered Britain at the Battle of Hastings.
6	Tim and I are going away We'll be spending Saturday and Sunday
in	the mountains.
7	I have to work late because that's the day we order new stock.
8	the hippies went to peace rallies and wore flowers in their hair.
9	I'll meet you Come to my office at twelve o'clock.
10	The bus leaves and you're still not ready!
11	, people lived in caves and hunted wild animals for food.
12	2 I'm rather busy, but I'll call you later this evening.

## 2. Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition where it is necessary.

- 1 A: It took me half an hour to walk home.
  - B: What? You shouldn't be walking home alone ...at... night!
- 2 A: How did you meet Sandra?B: We met at a party.....New Year's Eve.
- 3 A: Where is Paul? We're supposed to be going out
  - B: He'll be here ......a minute. He's just gore to the shops.
- 4 A: When shall I visit you next?B: Oh, ...... any Tuesday will be fine.
- 5 A: When is Terry's birthday?
  - B: I'm not sure. I think it's .. September.
- 6 A: I don't want to have my tooth taken out.
  - B: Don't get upset. It will be over a second
- 7 A: You'll have to let me know how the meeting goes.B: Yes. I'll call you...tomorrow evening.
- 8 A: Are the banks open on Saturdays?
  - B: Yes. They're open ... nine ...... twelve.
- 9 A: What's wrong with Sally?

B: She's got flu. She'll be better a few days.

10 A: When are you going on holiday?

B: We're leaving .....Friday evening.

## 3. Underline the correct preposition.

Jeff and Celia are walking 1) *in/at* the 1 village. They often do this 2) *at/in* the weekend. They walk from their house 3) *against/ to* the park, and then they go -back again. Today, it I is very sunny. Jeff and Celia have stopped to look at the flowers. They are standing 4) *under/ over* the branches of a large tree. They have just walked 5) *above/across* the small white bridge 6) *in/among* the park. There is a wooden bench 7) *near/behind* the flowers, which Celia likes to sit 8) *at/on* when she gets tired.

### 4. Choose the correct answer.

1 They moved to this townC 1992.			
A at	B on	C in	
2 I found my keys the sofa.			
A under	B between	C among	
3 It's very dark	k when you driv	ve.a tunnel.	
A onto	B down	C through	
4 The thief cli	mbedthe w	all and escaped.	
A into	B over	C near	
5 Mr Jones ha	s a meeting	three o'clock this afternoon.	
A at	B in	Con	
A at	DIII	C OII	
		Saturday night.	
6 They are hav		Saturday night.	
6 They are hav A at	ving a party	Saturday night. C on	
6 They are hav A at 7 There is a se	ving a party B in	Saturday night. C on le bookcase.	
6 They are hav A at 7 There is a se A across	ving a partys B in cret doorth B at	Saturday night. C on le bookcase.	

5. Fill in the gaps with out of, towards, through, along, past, to or over.



Gary and Anita are walking 1) <u>...along...</u> the pavement side by side as they go 2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the bridge 3) \_\_\_\_\_\_ their office. They are walking 4) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a man who is working on his laptop computer. Anita enjoys walking 5) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the city, but Gary doesn't like the traffic or the noise. He tries to get 6) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the city every weekend and go 7) \_\_\_\_\_\_ his house in the country.

#### 6. Choose the correct answer.

1 My uncle and aunt live ... a farm in Norfolk. A in B on C at 2 The girl.....this picture is my cousin. A in B on C at 3 There were many delicious dishes the menu. A in B on C at 4 I met some interesting people... the party last night. A in B on C at 5 Jim is ......hospital with a broken ankle. A in B on C at B on A in C at 7 We stopped ..... a roadside cafe for something to eat. A on B at C to 8 Dad likes to relax ......his favourite armchair when he comes home from work. A in C at B on 9 I saw the job advertised today's newspaper. B on A in C at 10 His office is through the door. the right. A in B on C at

### 7. Fill in the blanks.

1. We had driven down to Garrod's farm ... Sunday morning. 2. My father was born ... 1967. 3. My last train leaves ... 11.30.4. Joe returned to the village... the morning. 5. She left San-Francisco ... 2 June 1992. 6. ... Christmas, I'd send her a postcard and a present 7. She hated to stay in the country ... autumn. 8. They met at the annual party ... November, 20. 9. He used to come and read to me ... bedtime. 10.1 walked twenty and thirty miles ... a day. 11.... Easter all the family gathered in their old house in Florida. 12. The car should be here ... 10 minutes. 13. The classes start... Thursday. 14. She had to run because she had a history class... 9. 30 and she was still home. 15.... the morning everybody hurried to work. 16. Carrol was born ... 13 April 1974 . 17. They were to meet downtown ... noon. 18. ... summer they used to go to Greece for a week or two. 19. Let's go to the movies ... Friday. 20. The meeting started ... 10.30 ... the afternoon. 21. ... two years he became a sales manager. 22. She wanted everything to be perfect... their wedding day. 23.... the evening they all left for Texas. 24. This part of the country is very hot... August.

### 8. Translate into English.

1. За 5 років вона знову повернулася до рідного міста. 2. Щонеділі вся родина ходила до церкви. З. О пів на десяту ранку Том уже був на роботі. 4. У 1981 році

родина Росе переїхала з Великої Британії до Індії. 5. Кожного року 18 жовтня в місті відбувався карнавал. 6. На День подяки Джим вирішив залишитися в Атланті. 7. Цього року відпустка Енн була у грудні, і вона вирішила вирушити до Таїланду. 8. Свій двадцятий день народження Лі вирішила провести в Лас-Вегасі. 9. Рік подзвонив Ліз і сказав, що заїде по неї о пів на восьму вечора. 10. Вечорами він любив сидіти в кріслі біля каміна. 11. Восени, коли почалися дощі, околиці ставали зовсім сумними. 12. їхній старший син народився 28 вересня 1983 року. 13. У вересні вони збиралися з'їздити до Норвегії, але у них не вистачило грошей. 14. Через два тижні треба було складати іспит, а він ще не почав готуватися. 15. На Великодень погода була дуже сонячна, і діти вирішили відправитися в похід. 16. Через 10 років вони знову зустрілися. 17. Опівдні Джил заїхав до пошти, щоб забрати посилку. 18. Пізніше ввечері вони знову зібралися за столом, щоб обговорити, коли влаштувати прийом. 19. На День Незалежності зазвичай влаштовували пікнік за містом. 20. Уночі у величезному особняку було страшнувато, звідусіль ввижались привиди. 21. Друга світова війна почалася у 1939 році. 22. О пів на першу він закінчив справи в банку і вирішив поїхати перекусити. 23. У неділю, оскільки це був її перший вихідний за два місяці, вона вирішила просто нічого не робити. 24. На Великодень в магазині завжди святковий настрій. 25. Олів була дуже товариська і вже через пару років стала головою відділу зв'язків із громадськістю.

#### **OTHER PREPOSITIONS**

#### 1. Fill in the correct preposition.

- 1. What are you waiting \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2. Why are you looking \_\_\_\_\_ yourself in the mirror?
- 3. How often do you listen \_\_\_\_\_ the radio?
- 4. My parents live \_\_\_\_\_ a small cottage.
- 5. My brother works \_\_\_\_\_ my father.
- 6. Those books belong \_\_\_\_\_ John Smith.
- 7. We aren't going out tonight. We're staying \_\_\_\_\_ home.
- 8. My father comes \_\_\_\_\_ Ireland.

#### 2. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1. I don't believe at / in ghosts.
- 2. Lauren takes care of / about our children.
- 3. Spain is famous with / for its many festivals.
- 4. I'm afraid of / from spiders and snakes.
- 5. They arrived in / at the hotel in time for lunch.
- 6. I don't care for / of rock music.
- 7. We will arrive at / in New York at about two o'clock.
- 8. The streets were full of / with people watching the parade.
- 9. I'll have to discuss the party to / with my parents first.
- 10. He couldn't concentrate on / in his work, so he went for a walk.
- 11. James managed to get at / to the bank before closing time.

#### 3. Fill in the correct preposition.

- 1. I'm not interested \_\_\_\_\_ sports.
- 2. Did you ask Katie \_\_\_\_\_ Joe's new address?
- 3. Stuart borrowed a suit \_\_\_\_\_ Andrew for the wedding.
- 4. I wish I was brilliant \_\_\_\_\_ English.
- 5. How can I explain this mess \_\_\_\_\_ my parents?

6. She wanted to invite Adam \_\_\_\_\_ her house for dinner, but she didn't know what to cook.

- 7. The boys laughed \_\_\_\_\_ their teacher when he tripped.
- 8. You should listen \_\_\_\_\_ your parents' advice.
- 9. We all looked \_\_\_\_\_ the sky as it started to rain.
- 10. Tom is married \_\_\_\_\_ Nicole.
- 11. James is good \_\_\_\_\_ Maths, but weak \_\_\_\_\_ History.
- 12. He asked \_\_\_\_\_ her husband's health.
- 13. Mary is engaged \_\_\_\_\_ conversation. It would be rude to interrupt.

#### 4. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1. Mary is always polite to / at her parents.
- 2. Sam was told off for being rude at / to his teacher.
- 3. The policemen shouted at / to thieves who tried to run away.
- 4. Jessica waited to / for the bus for an hour in the rain.
- 5. Rosie is writing to / at her pen-friend.
- 6. I am angry about / with Sue for taking my favourite shirt.
- 7. He was annoyed with his brother in / for making so much noise.
- 8. I'm going to complain to my boss with / about the lighting in the office.
- 9. John's opinion differ to / from Anne's, so they argue a lot.
- 10. The film is different from / at the book.

#### 5. Fill in the correct preposition.

- 1. She was annoyed \_\_\_\_\_\_ the postal strike, as she was waiting for a letter.
- 2. She is very clever \_\_\_\_\_ maths, so she helps me with my homework.
- 3. Unless his lawyer can find proof \_\_\_\_\_ his innocence, John will go to prison.
- 4. The police congratulated Mr Simmons \_\_\_\_\_ catching the burglar.
- 5. It was very generous \_\_\_\_\_ Steve to give all his old records to charity.
- 6. You shouldn't tease people \_\_\_\_\_ their problems.
- 7. I must apologise to Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ missing her party.
- 8. She applied to the bank \_\_\_\_\_\_ a loan so that she could buy a new car.

#### 6. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1. I'm very worried about / with failing my driving test.
- 2. Debbie was upset for / about not winning the prize.
- 3. Chris was surprised about / at the cost of the meal.
- 4. I'm sorry about / by the misunderstanding.
- 5. I'm sorry for / to breaking your favourite vase, Mum.
- 6. She smiled to / at the postman as he passed by.

- 7. Jerry's parents are very proud of / with him.
- 8. They warned all ships for / of the coming storm.
- 9. It is polite to reply at / to an invitation.
- 10. I searched everywhere about / for my keys.

#### 7. Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form and a suitable preposition.

aim at sb / sth	fail in sth	suffer from
crash into sb / sth	hope for sth	think about sb / sth
regard sb / sth as	react to	head for
depend on sth	save from	take advantage of
1. Emma is	the best singer in the choir.	
2. Every summer I	hay fever.	
3. I'm	getting a new car.	
4. The crew were _	drowning by the lifejacl	kets they wore.
5. We didn't know	how Kevin would the	news.
6. After the heatwa	ve, everyone rain.	
7. She	the sale and did a lot of shopping.	
8. The archer	the target, but missed.	
9. I m	y radio for all the latest news.	
10. The army	their attempt to take control	of the city last night.
11. In the summer	I the beach.	
12. She lost control	l of the car and a tree.	

#### 8. Fill in the gaps with one of the adjectives from the table and a suitable preposition.

patient with sb	responsible for sth	similar to sth	
keen on sth	satisfied with sth	suspicious of sb / sth	
pleased with sth	terrified with sb / sth	mean to sb	
kind to sb	tired of sb / sth	hopeless at sth	

- 1. Teachers should be \_\_\_\_\_ children.
- 2. Parents are \_\_\_\_\_\_ their children.
- 3. My baby brother is \_\_\_\_\_ the dark.
- 4. Roger is very \_\_\_\_\_ basketball and wants to play for his country one day.
- 5. The police are \_\_\_\_\_ the butler.
- 6. Diane's car is \_\_\_\_\_ Elaine's.
- 7. Martin is always \_\_\_\_\_\_ other people. He's always ready to help.
  8. She was so \_\_\_\_\_\_ her new dress that she put it on immediately.
- 9. If you are not \_\_\_\_\_\_ a product you can return it.
- 10. Anna was \_\_\_\_\_\_ doing her homework.
- 11. He is maths.

12. The other students were \_\_\_\_\_ Toby because he was small; they teased him all the time.

#### 9. Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs / nouns from the list in the correct form and a suitable preposition.

blame sb/sth for sth	decide on sth	hear from sb	
put the blame on sb/sth	disadvantage of sth	hear of sb/sth	
deal with sth	hear about sth/sb		

- 1. Policemen have to \_\_\_\_\_ all kinds of problems.
- 2. He couldn't \_\_\_\_\_\_ a name for his new puppy.
- 3. Claire had never \_\_\_\_\_\_ Mel Gibson until she watched 'Ransom'.

   4. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ Paul \_\_\_\_ the accident.
- 5. It's easy to put the \_\_\_\_\_\_ others when something goes wrong.
- 6. The \_\_\_\_\_\_ having a credit card is that it is easy to spend too much money.
- 7. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ Jill yesterday. She is in Norway.
- 8. Have you the new Disney film? It's meant to be fantastic.

### 10. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1. This music reminds me of / to my country.
- 2. They were delighted with / from their presents.
- 3. It is wrong to be cruel in / to other people.
- 4. He was sentenced to / at nine years in prison.
- 5. She locked the car to prevent it from / by being stolen.
- 6. Beryl was astonished by / with the number of cards she received.
- 7. My mother is taking care about / of our dog.
- 8. This organization n is trying to end cruelty to / in animals.
- 9. The professor translated the poem in / into Russian.
- 10. He was dissatisfied with / by his new stereo, so he returned it to the shop.
- 11. He was accused at / of robbing the bank.
- 12. He was condemned in / to life imprisonment.

#### 11. Fill in the correct preposition.

- 1. The room was crowded \_\_\_\_\_ people.
- 2. Tim was furious \_\_\_\_\_ Jake \_\_\_\_\_ forgetting his birthday.
- 3. He was later ashamed \_\_\_\_\_ his bad behaviour.
- 4. He wanted a photograph \_\_\_\_\_ his hotel to show his friends.
- 5. My sister is frightened \_\_\_\_\_ thunder.
- 6. She introduced her friends \_\_\_\_\_ her parents.
- 7. My brother was furious \_\_\_\_\_ losing his job.
- 8. John was impressed David's cooking.
- 9. I have the use \_ my friend's car this week.
- 10. We need to find a solution \_\_\_\_\_ the problem.
- 11. School provides children \_\_\_\_\_ a basic education.
- 12. 'Playing the lottery is a waste time,' said Helen.

#### 12. Underline the correct preposition.

1. My dentist is always nice to / with me.

2. What was the reason about / for his behaviour?

3. The damage at / to his car couldn't be repaired.

4. I'm fed up to / with staying in - let's go out.

5. His reaction about / to the news was surprising.

6. There has been an increase to / in temperature.

7. I rely to / on my friends if I have a problem.

8. There will be a rise in / of school fees next year.

9. Janet was scared at / of her French teacher.

10. How much did you pay Jason for / about the bike?

11. She was very fond of / to her niece and nephew.

12. There is very little demand for / about typewriters these days, now that computers are so popular.

#### 13. Fill in the correct preposition.

1. At the fair, John threw a ball \_\_\_\_\_ a coconut to win a prize.

- 2. He threw the car keys \_\_\_\_\_ Alan.
- 3. I always talk \_\_\_\_\_ my best friend \_\_\_\_\_ my problems.
- 4. We were shocked \_\_\_\_\_ the damage caused by the storm.
- 5. She wears a hat \_\_\_\_\_ protect her hair \_\_\_\_\_ the rain.
- 6. Cathy was jealous \_\_\_\_\_ her sister, who was very pretty.
- 7. She didn't know anything \_\_\_\_\_ the surprise party.
- 8. I lost contact \_\_\_\_\_ my friend after she immigrated.
- 9. I wrote a cheque \_\_\_\_\_ \$100.
- 10. It was clever \_\_\_\_\_ Sam to find this restaurant.
- 11. I manage to live \_\_\_\_\_ about \$50 a week.
- 12. There was no hope \_\_\_\_\_\_ escape for the terrified prisoners.

## 14. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1. My grandfather is perfectly capable of / at looking after himself.
- 2. Nobody seems to care for / about good manners these days.
- 3. Nurses care for / about the sick and injured.

4. The difference among / between Carl and Matthew is that Matthew has dark hair and Carl has fair hair.

- 5. The cause for / of the fire was a gas leak.
- 6. I didn't approve of his attitude in / towards his work.
- 7. He was not aware of / about the strike.
- 8. My family consists of / from myself, my parents and my sister.
- 9. He insisted in / on having a telephone in his bedroom.
- 10. Martha takes good care of / for her children.

#### **15.** *Fill in the correct preposition(s)*

1. There is no connection \_\_\_\_\_ the two crimes.

- 2. Caroline was very grateful \_\_\_\_\_ Bob \_\_\_\_\_ helping her with her homework.
- 3. He charged me \_\_\_\_\_ two coffees when I had only had one.
- 4. The men were charged \_\_\_\_\_ manslaughter.

- 5. The divided the cake \_\_\_\_\_ two pieces.
- 6. He was arrested in connection \_\_\_\_\_ the attack.
- 7. The old man died \_\_\_\_\_ a heart attack.
- 8. The lecturer spoke to the class \_\_\_\_\_ art.
- 9. He was unconscious \_\_\_\_\_ being watched.

#### 16. Fill in the correct preposition.

- 1. She was very excited \_\_\_\_\_ her holiday.
- 2. She wanted to change her car \_\_\_\_\_ a motorbike.
- 3. The explorers escaped \_\_\_\_\_ the savage lions.
- 4. Nobody knows what happened \_\_\_\_\_ my jacket. It's just vanished.
- 5. My English teacher is very impatient \_\_\_\_\_ students who don't do their homework.
- 6. He was bored \_\_\_\_\_ his work, so he applied for a new job.
- 7. He was disappointed \_\_\_\_\_ his new computer game. It was very easy.
- 8. He was amazed \_\_\_\_\_ the beautiful scenery.
- 9. Peter couldn't forgive Tom \_\_\_\_\_ breaking his new toy.
- 10. My History teacher is very friendly \_\_\_\_\_ the class.

#### 17. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1 Tom hid *through/behind* the door to surprise his sister.
- 2 A: Do you live in Smith Street?
  - B: Yes. My house is *near/along* the park.
- 3 I'll meet you *along/outside* the cinema at seven o'clock.
- 4 John's ladder was leaning *against/onto* the wall.
- 5 A: Where's Steve?

B: He's *in/on* the garden, playing football.

- 6 Jane sat *outside/next* to Sarah in the English lesson.
- 7 He found his watch *from/under* his bed.
- 8 We didn't see the turning. In fact, we drove straight *past/towards* it.
- 9 She hung the mirror *up/over* the fireplace.
- 10 He walked *between/along* the street, looking in the shop windows.
- 11 A: Why are you so tired?

B: Because I ran all the way *above/from* the station.

12 The new supermarket is *opposite/among* the library.

#### 18. Choose the correct item.

- 1 My school is ..... the department store and the park. A between B below C among
- 2 What's ...... this box? It's very heavy. A onto B opposite C inside
- 3 A tall man sat..... me, so I couldn't see. A next to B in front of C towards
- 4 This train goes .... London to Leeds. A through B from C near
- 5 The Thames is the river that runs London.

A across	B among	C through	
	0	0	
6 John's flat is	on the second	d floor, the chemist's.	
A above	B on	C along	
7 There was a	pretty picnic	area. the trees.	
A in	B along	C among	
8 She got	the bus and	went into a shop.	
A against	B off	C down	
9 On my way.	the dinne	r party, I stopped to buy some flo	owers.
A to	B past	C towards	
10 The childre	n saw their m	other and ran her.	
A against	B towards	C by	
11 Tony alway	s keeps the re	emote control . him when he wate	ches TV.
A beside	B inside	C between	
12 They built a	a wooden brid	ge the stream.	
A against	B below	C over	
13 The postma	n walked	my house without delivering any	v letters.
A past	B near	C along	
14 There are so	ome keys	the table, next to my bag.	
A in		B on	C across

#### 19. Fill in the gaps with at, on, in where necessary.

1	A: I've got a dentist's appointment Friday.
	B: Oh, I went to the dentist's last week.
2	A: What time is your interview?
	B: It's ten o'clock the morning.
-	

- 3 A: I'm going on holiday....July.B: Me too. I always go on holiday ...the summer.
- 4 A: I'm having a party .... Saturday night.B: Really? Can I come?
- 5 A: Are you having a piano lesson .. this week?B: Yes. My teacher is coming ... Thursday.
- 6 A: When did you start working here?B: ..... 1996, when I left university.
- 7 A: Jane bought a new car..... yesterday.B: Oh. What's it like?
- 8 A: Is Grandma coming to visit us ...... Christmas Day?B: Yes. She'll be here .....lunchtime.
- 9 A: Dad, when were you born?B: I was born .......7th June, 1965.
- 10 A: Shall we meet ..... seven o'clock ...... tomorrow?B: Oh, I can't. I have a meeting that time.
- 11 A: When was the bicycle invented?
  - B: It was invented the nineteenth century.
- 12 A: John and Mary are moving house ... November.B: I know. Mary told me ....last week.

- 13 A: Do you start work.... nine o'clock?B: Oh, no. I never work.. the mornings.
- 14 A: Shall we go out....this evening?B: Yes. I'd love to go out.. tonight.
- 15 A: When does the train to Birmingham leave?B: It leaves..... quarter past eight.

### 20. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1 The sign on the gate said "Beware *from/of* the dog".
- 2 Kate blamed Mark *on/for* ruining the holiday.
- 3 The advantage of/in having a car is that you can go wherever you like.
- 4 I am angry with/about John for making such a mess.
- 5 Alan is very bad to/at Maths. He finds it very difficult.
- 6 My sister believes in/on fairies.
- 7 He was ashamed of/about his bad behaviour, so he apologised.
- 8 The policeman accused the man of/about stealing the money.
- 9 The train arrived *in/at* London half an hour early.
- 10 I apologised to Paul for/of breaking his watch.
- 11 Peter is bored with/from his job. He wants to find a new one.
- 12 Mike was unaware *of/about* the people watching him.

## 21. Fill in the gaps with the correct prepositions.

- 1 I've lost contact...... most of my old school friends.
- 2 Sam was complaining.....having a stomachache this morning.
- 3 Mobile phones allow you to communicate ..... people wherever you are.
- 4 The shops were crowded ....people doing their Christmas shopping.
- 5 The children were so noisy that I couldn't concentrate ...... my work.
- 6 Scientists are trying to find a cure cancer.
- 7 Babies are not capable ...... looking after themselves.
- 8 This sauce consists ..... tomatoes and herbs.
- 9 I take care ......my neighbour's cat when she is on holiday.
- 10 Contrary ...... what the papers say, the Prime Minister will not retire.
- 11 We congratulated Sarah ..... passing her driving test.
- 12 The police are questioning a man in connection the robbery.

## 22. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1 We had an interesting discussion *about/for* careers today.
- 2 Paul was dissatisfied of/with his new car.
- 3 Janet has difficulty *in/with* understanding Physics.
- 4 There is no excuse *for/about* such terrible behaviour.
- 5 Two men escaped *from/to* prison last night.
- 6 Clare was delighted *in/with* all her birthday presents.
- 7 The children were excited *for/about* going to the fair.
- 8 John deals *from/with* a lot of difficult situations in his job.
- 9 Princess Diana died *in/of* a car accident.

- 10 We decided *to/against* going to Florida, as it would have been too expensive.
- 11 You really should do something with/about the garden. It's a mess.
- 12 Bill was eager *for/at* the chance to meet his favourite singer.

#### 23. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1 My little brother is frightened *about/of* the dark.
- 2 I heard *from/about* your new job. Congratulations!
- 3 She forgave me *about/for* breaking her stereo.
- 4 The man was found guilty *about/of* the crime.
- 5 Spielberg is famous *for/of* directing films.
- 6 Molly is very fond *of/with* her cat, Nibbs.
- 7 Smoking is very harmful *to/for* your health.
- 8 Tom forgot *about/of* his dinner and it burnt in the oven.
- 9 James is very good *at/with* sport.
- 10 Mr Brown is very friendly *to/for* his neighbours.
- 11 I'm very grateful to you *about/for* helping me.
- 12 Are you familiar of/with the filing system here?

#### 24. Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.

- 1 There has been an increase .... crime in this area recently.
- 2 Suzie is jealous ..... her little sister.
- 3 Mrs Jones looks ..... my cat while I am away.
- 4 I mistook that man..... my English teacher.
- 5 He didn't know......the meeting, so he didn't attend.
- 6 Kevin is keen ..... travel around Europe when he leaves school.
- 7 Simon didn't want to join ...... the party games.
- 8 I can't find my wallet. I've been looking it all morning.
- 9 Jason is married ......a famous actress.
- 10 She has no interest..... Science. She prefers Art.
- 11 It's hard for a family to live ..... only one salary.
- 12 Kelly invited me.....her birthday party.

#### 25. Choose the correct preposition.

- 1 I didn't have enough money, so I paid . credit card.
- A in B for C by
- 2 Are you nervous ..... starting your new job? A of B about C for
- 3 I object ...... being spoken to in that manner.

A to B of C for

- 4 These books are very popular. children. A for B with C by
- 5 It didn't occur..... me to lock the windows. A with B of C to
- 6 She is very proud..... her new flat. A of B about C with

7 What is v	our opinionN	Ar Green?
A for	1	C about
8 Take no 1	notice Paul. H	Ie's always showing off.
A about	B from	C of
9 John's mo	other punished	him being naughty.
A for	B at	C of
10 Tina's ba	by daughter is	named her grandmother.
A after	B for	C by
11 It is rude	to point peo	ople.
A on	B at	C with
12 We were	puzzledhis	strange behaviour.
A at	B in	C by

#### 26. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1 Watching that old film reminded me *from/of* my childhood.
- 2 He replaced the original painting *by/with* a copy.
- 3 I can always rely *on/in* my parents in times of trouble.
- 4 Jamie has recovered *from/of* his cold. He feels much better now.
- 5 How did David react *at/to* the bad news?
- 6 Shakespeare is regarded *by/as* the greatest playwright of all time.
- 7 The reason *for/of* the delay was a problem with the plane's engine.
- 8 Parents should be responsible *about/for* their children's behaviour.
- 9 I must get rid *with/of* this car. It's time I bought a new one.
- 10I ran into/on an old schoolfriend of mine yesterday.
- 11 His comments were not relevant to/for the discussion.
- 12 Children should have respect to/for their teachers.

#### 27. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1 We sheltered *of/from* the storm in an old barn.
- 2 I hate it when people stare *on/at* me.
- 3 Your jacket is the same *as/with* mine.
- 4 I forgot my homework, so the teacher shouted *at/to* me.
- 5 Kate suffers *by/from* hayfever in the summer.
- 6 My sister isn't scared *about/of* spiders. She likes them.
- 7 The judge sentenced the men *to/with* three years in prison.
- 8 Colin is serious in/about travelling around the world.
- 9 This film is similar *with/to* the one we watched last week.
- 10 I'm sick with/of staying in. Why don't we go out for a change?
- 11 Who's that girl? She keeps smiling *at/to* me.
- 12 I'm not sure *with/about* this plan. It might not work.

#### 28. Underline the correct preposition.

- 1 He translated the letter from French *to/into* English.
- 2 I warned him *about/over* taking that job, but he didn't listen.
- 3 Will you wait *for/of* me? I'll only be a few minutes.

- 4 We are used *with/to* cold weather. We live in Norway.
- 5 I always talk to my mother *for/about* my problems.
- 6 Steve is tired *of/from* living in the city. He wants to move to the country.
- 7 I often wonder *over/about* what it would be like to live abroad.
- 8 Carolyn has wonderful taste *in/of* clothes.
- 9 Alan is terrified *with/of* snakes. He can't bear to look at them.
- 10 I forgot to thank Paula *about/for* the present she gave me.
- 11 Sandra is terrible *at/in* dancing. She has two left feet.
- 12 Terry threw the keys *at/to* Mike, but Mike didn't catch them.

#### 29. Choose the correct item.

- According ......the weather forecast, it's going to rain tomorrow. A with B to C of
   You can always count ..... me if you need help.
- A on B for C to
- 3 I'm sorry about my behaviour. I had no intentionhurting you.A ofB toC for
- 4 I spent all my money ...clothes and CDs. A for B on C in
- 5 Don't put the blame.....me! It was Carol who broke the window! A on B for C to
- 6 It's typical ......her not to admit she's made a mistake. A to B from C of
- 7 He was very polite because he wanted to make a good impression the new boss. A of B to C on
- 8 I haven't heard ...... James for months. I wonder how he's doing. A about B of C from
- 9 The man was charged ...... breaking and entering. A about B with C for
- 10 He insisted...... paying for dinner because it was my birthday.

A on B in C about

11 Don't worry ..... the invitations. Mark promised to send them tomorrow.

A about B for C with

- 12 One of the disadvantages .....working part-time is that you don't earn much money.
- A in B of C about
- 13 I have a good relationship ... my parents.

A between B about C with

- 14 They didn't succeed ..... finishing their project on time so they didn't get a bonus. A to B in C at
- 15 I'm fed up ..... his rude behaviour.
  - A of B with C about
- 16 There is no hope ..... finding any more survivors of the plane crash.

A of B in C for

- 17 Tim is an expert..... ancient history.
  - A for B with C on

18 The police suspect Mr Williams ..... the murder. A of B for C with
19 I dreamt ...... my old teacher last night. A for B of C about
20 Heavy rain was the cause .... the flood. A for B of C to

## 30. Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition from the list. Some prepositions can be used more than once.

at, on, in, out of, by, off, under, against, for, within

1 Medicine should be kept ...... reach of children.

2 They left early this morning, so they must have arrived ..... now.

3 I don't understand how some people can listen to music and study ..... the same time.

4 They're having their house painted so they're staying with us ..... the time being.

- 5 You'd better not talk to Pam today; she's a bad mood.
- 6 The company's new product will be the market next month.
- 7 "You're.....arrest!" the policeman shouted to the robber.
- 8 The buses were ......strike yesterday.
- 9 He was ..... breath when he finished the race.
- 10 Shane was...... school last week because he had flu.
- 11 She paid for her new stereo... cash.
- 12 They delivered the parcel to the wrong house ..... mistake.
- 13 We must finish this project by Friday all costs.
- 14 The ambulance arrived .... minutes to take the injured people to hospital.

15 It is..... the law to steal.

## 31. Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition from the list. Some prepositions can be used more than once.

#### on, to, in, at, off, by, for, under

1 She doesn't live in the city centre. She lives ..... the outskirts.

- 2 Unfortunately, I will be away from home ..... my birthday.
- 3 Bright colours are ..... fashion this season.
- 4 ..... this day, I remember my first day at school.
- 5 I never stay out late ..... night.
- 6 We will contact you ..... phone when your tickets are ready.
- 7 John has gone......a walk by the lake.
- 8 .....second thoughts, I will have another slice of cake.
- 9 He wasn't wearing his uniform because he was ...... duty.
- 10 Alison has gone home early. She's feeling a bit ..... the weather today.
- 11 I can't talk to you now. I'm...a hurry.
- 12 Do you keep ...... touch with anyone from school?
- 13 Lisa spilt her coffee on the carpet ...... accident.
- 14 We haven't been to the theatre ... ages.
- 15 I signed the letter....behalf of the manager.

#### 32. Choose the correct item.

1 There's someone ...... the door. Can you open it, please? A in B at C on 2 I'd like to go out for dinner...a change. B for C off A on 3 Most children start school.. the age of five. A on B out C at 4 ..... the time I arrived, the others had gone home. B For C By A In 5 He works very hard when he's . pressure. B under A in C on 6 The answers to the exercise are page 76. A at B on C in 7 There is a lovely duck pond the park. A on B at C in 8 I met my neighbour .... chance at the airport. B by A at C on 9 You look tired. You should sit down a while. A out B at C for 10 The post office is .. the left, next to the bank. A on B out C at 11 Please fill in the form ... pencil. A for B in C at 12 Many animals are ..... danger of becoming extinct. C under A in B at 13 We went to the station.... taxi. A by B at C with 14 The police didn't believe his story first. A in C at B on 15 Oranges are expensive now because they're ..... season. A in B out of C off 16 Paul is ......holiday in Mexico at the moment. C in A on B at 17 There is a beautiful house .... sale in that street. A for C under B in 18 Christine made the decorations.. herself. A in B on C by 19 The plane went ...... control, but the pilot managed to land it safely. A under B out of C off 20 The vase fell on the floor and broke .... pieces. B out C at A into 21 I've read this poem so many times that I know it ...... heart. A from B by C at 22 I like all vegetables; lettuce and cabbage particular. C in A for B on

<ul> <li>23 I'm sorry but you can't use the lift. It's . order. A out of B in C off</li> <li>24 Kate doesn't want a cake. She's a diet. A on B in C at</li> <li>25 Bob likes playing golf his free time. A on B at C in</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>33. Fill in the correct preposition</li> <li>1. The president was accompanied his wife on his recent tour.</li> <li>2. He could not account \$5,000 missing from the company's books.</li> <li>3. You must be acquainted all the facts before stating your</li> </ul>	2 of, for, in
<ul> <li>opinion.</li> <li>4. The police will advise you how to discourage burglars.</li> <li>5. Jane didn't agree John's interpretation of the situation.</li> <li>6. She'll never agree marry you.</li> <li>7. He aimed the target and fired his gun.</li> <li>8. The money that the children collected amounted \$590.</li> <li>9. The government appealed the public to stay calm during the</li> </ul>	4 of, on, to 5 to, of, with 6 to, with, in 7 to, in, at 8 in, on, to
<ul> <li>crisis.</li> <li>10. My parents do no approve my new hairstyle.</li> <li>11. Henry is very ashamed his behaviour at last night's party.</li> <li>12. She's extremely attached her parents.</li> <li>13. Thomas is always aware his mother's over-protective attitude.</li> <li>14. There has been another military attack the bases in Spain.</li> </ul>	12 to, on, with
<ul> <li>34. Fill in the correct preposition</li> <li>1. Dave was very bad maths and always failed the tests.</li> <li>2. Sally was very bad her brother.</li> <li>3. Mum can't come to the phone. She's busy the cooking.</li> <li>4. This film is based a true story.</li> <li>5. You can't blame me the accident; I wasn't even there.</li> <li>6. She always puts the blame me for things that I haven't done.</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>7. There will be an extra charge delivering the goods to your home.</li> <li>8. The suspect has been arrested and charged robbery.</li> <li>9. It's very important nowadays to care our environment.</li> <li>10. Sarah was fond of Peter and cared him very much.</li> <li>11. You should take care your teeth.</li> <li>12. Jane was clever history and always received the highest marks.</li> <li>13. It was very clever you to find the answer.</li> </ul>	<ul><li>8 in, with, for</li><li>9 of, in, about</li><li>10 of, for, with</li><li>11 about, with, of</li></ul>
14. The patient was complaining a pain in his chest.	14 with, to, of

15. The secretary was always complaining \_\_\_\_\_ having too much 15 about, to, for work.

16. I would like to congratulate you \_\_\_\_\_ passing your exams. 16 of, on, in

### 35. Translate into English.

А. 1. Церква знаходилася за два квартали вниз по вулиці. 2. Уздовж дороги росли молоді дерева. З. Перш ніж ми приїхали, на нас вже чекали. 4. Робота повинна бути закінчена протягом місяця. 5. Вони вирішили зупинитися біля невеликого озера і відпочити. 6. Не дивлячись на те, що Стівен пропрацював усього рік, він чудово знав свою справу. 7. Ці сходи зроблені з мармуру. 8. Сонце було вже високо в небі, коли вони прокинулися. 9. Температура була нижче нуля, і земля була вкрита снігом. 10. Президент вирушив до столиці прямо з Техасу. 11. Він вирішив добиратися до Європи пароплавом. 12. Я так і не зателефонував Джону, хоча й обіцяв. 13. Через віконне скло вона дивилася, як падає сніг. 14. До двох годин дня їй потрібно було бути на роботі. 15. Рада одноголосно проголосувала за цю пропозицію. 16. Дорога йшла повз озеро. 17. Я не бачив її з того часу, як вона востаннє приїжджала в гості. 18. Він вирішив летіти до Монреаля літаком, оскільки це був найоптимальніший варіант. 19. Вона прекрасно грала в настільний теніс і дуже цим пишалася. 20. Кішка мирно спала під диваном у вітальні. 21. Я купила цей светр для свого молодшого брата. 22. У неділю ми думали зібратися у Біла, але нічого не вийшло. 23. Він обійшов навколо будинку і опинився в невеличкому, але доглянутому саду. 24. Він все прибрав зі столу і розклав на ньому карту. 25. Вони повинні складати іспит завтра вранці.

В. 1. Лекція про проблеми сучасних підлітків викликала великий інтерес. 2. Влітку їй дуже подобалося мандрувати країною. З. Протягом дня Елен кілька разів телефонувала додому, щоб дізнатися, як себе почуває її батько. 4. Він стояв на верхівці пагорба, а містечко в долині лежало у нього під ногами. 5. Ця церква була побудована у XIX столітті відомим архітектором. 6. Він вирішив повернутися додому пішки. 7. Вони зупинилися на ніч у невеликому готелі, а вранці продовжили свій шлях. 8. Щоб якось скоротити час, вони говорили про погоду та всяку всячину. 9. Він поклав касету до шухляди стола і закрив її на ключ. 10. У п'ятницю всі були на роботі, крім Джейн. 11. У дитинстві Майк дуже любив їздити потягом. 12. Багато хто вважав, що Том дуже недосвідчений для такої посади. 13. Через 2 місяці ми вже зможемо сказати, чи успішно пройшли випробування нової моделі. 14. Вона була дуже зайнята протягом усього минулого тижня. 15. На вечірці було багато людей, але більшість була мені незнайома. 16. Він побіг вниз пагорбом до того місця, де бачив багаття. 17. Не дивлячись на погану погоду, матч відбувся. 18. Розкажи мені про свої плани на наступне літо. 19. Голоси розділилися: одні голосували за Майкла, інші - проти. 20. Тод і Джулі чекають на мене біля університету рівно об одинадцятій. 21. У четвер він працює тільки вранці з восьмої до дванадцятої. 22. Його сім'я родом з Центральної Африки. 23. На жаль, Айрис не було вдома разом із ним. 24. Він

поклав книгу на стіл і задумався. 25. Тонні почував себе упевнено, коли знав, що його брат працював.

#### 36. Translate into English.

21.1. Шухляда була наповнена іграшками. 2. Вона розуміла, що єдиний вихід був у тому, щоб позичити у тітки грошей. З. Найкоротший шлях до озера пролягав через ліс. 4. У цій частині річки плисти проти течії було практично неможливо. 5. Я впевнена, що вона з найкращих міркувань порадила вам, як вчинити. 6. Авто Джеррі зламалася, тому він приїхав на таксі. 7. Будинок опалювався газом. 8. Сукню зшили із старих іграшок Джейн. 9. Як і обіцяла, Террі подзвонила рівно о пів на шосту. 10. На всі свої гроші вони купили яхту і відправилися на ній навколо світу. 11. Я приїхав до університету десь до 10 години, щоб устигнути підготуватися до занять. 12. Майже все в будинку було зроблене самим Дейвом. 13. Том поклав годинник на стіл поруч із книгою, щоб не пропустити фільм. 14. Джейн сказала, що телефонує з вулиці і буде у мене хвилин за п'ять. 15. Він жестом показав у бік моря і сказав, що на узбережжі багато невеличких готелів. 16. Увесь день вона була зайнята. 17. Він з дитинства мріяв перетнути країну від узбережжя до узбережжя на мотоциклі. 18. Ми не бачили Мері з минулого понеділка, мабуть, вона захворіла. 19. Коли літак летів над океаном, пасажирам показували фільм. 20. Його масивний стіл був із червоного дерева. 21. За останні кілька років Стіву довелося декілька разів міняти роботу. 22. Крім будинку в Чикаго, Ерік мав ще квартиру в Нью-Йорку. 23. Вони домовилися зустрітися в університеті у вівторок. 24. Чим вище в гори, тим холодніше. 25. Він відкрив коробку, але всередині не було нічого цікавого. Іноді важко відрізнити правду від брехні. 22. Він провів усе літо в селі. 23. Не думаю, щоб вона чекала тебе до пів на шосту, якщо ви домовилися зустрітися о п'ятій. 24. Спускаючись схилом пагорба, Джеррі намагався пригадати, де ж була стежина, якою він прийшов. 25. Молдавія розташована між Україною і Румунією. 26. Я не пам'ятаю точно, коли ми прийшли, але гадаю, що біля п'ятої. 27. Вона виглянула з вікна вагону, щоб краще роздивитися містечко, яке вони проїжджали. 28. Переліт до Ріо-де-Жанейро через Франкфурт виявився виснажливим. 29. Ця робота обов'язково повинна бути закінчена до 8 липня. 30. Не дивлячись на серйозну різницю у віці, вони прекрасно розуміли один одного. 31. На вимогу інспектора поліції розслідування було продовжене. 32. Джон переїхав, тепер він живе в будинку номер 10. Юклід Авеню. 33. Кафе знаходилося зразу за супермаркетом. 34. Алекс уже рушив до дверей, коли його покликали. 35. Щоб усе було готове вчасно, їй довелося працювати всю ніч. 36. У школі в нього завжди було багато друзів. 37. Джек зателефонував у 15 хвилин на сьому і сказав, що зайде рівно о восьмій, а його все немає. 38. Сьогодні на уроці англійської мови ми почали вивчати нову тему "Ресторан". 39. Інформацію повинно подати протягом доби. 40. Прогулянка на конях через парк усім дуже сподобалася. 41. Коли вони стерли пил з обкладинки старої книжки, то змогли прочитати її назву. 42. Крім цього невеликого ранчо, у Філа нічого не залишилося. 43. Якби не Рік, проект давно б уже закрили. 44. Чашка кави стояла на столі поміж книг та зошитів. 45. Не стій біля увімкнутого

телевізора - це шкідливо для здоров'я. 46. За дверима почулися кроки. 47. У квартирі поверхом нижче гучно грала музика. 48. Вечоріло, у селі вище річкою почали запалюватися вогні. 49. Вона поранила ногу вище коліна. 50. Поля простягалися на милі за річкою. 51. Рік стояв біля дверей, чекаючи поки Джейн розмовляла по телефону. 52. Вечорами він сидів на ґанку і читав книгу.

### ЧАСТИНА 3. МЕТОДИЧНІ РЕКОМЕНДАЦІЇ З ОРГАНІЗАЦІЇ САМОСТІЙНОЇ РОБОТИ СТУДЕНТІВ

### PART 3. STUDENTS' SELF-DIRECTED ACTIVITY ORGANIZATION GUIDE

### 1. MODAL AUXILIARIES AND RELATED VERBS, 'I WISH'

#### 1.1 The two uses of modal verbs

#### **1.1 A The first use of modal verbs (1)**

1 Verbs like can and may are modal auxiliaries. We often refer to them as modal verbs or just modals. We use them with other verbs, for example, to ask for permission: Can I use your phone, please? May I borrow your car, please? There are ten modals: can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must, ought to and three 'semi-modals': need, dare and used to. 2 In their first use, modal verbs have basic meanings which are given in dictionaries: I can lift 25 kg./l can type. - can/could (= ability): - may/might (= *permission*): You may leave early. - will/would (= *prediction*): It will rain soon. - shall *after* //We (= prediction): Will we find our way? - I'm sure we shall. - should/ought to (= duty): You should do as you 're told. - must (= total obligation): You *must be* quiet. - needn't (= no obligation): You needn't wait.

#### 1. What do these sentence express? Match A and B.

- 1 I can type 25 words a minute<u>c</u>
- 2 You should do as you're told.
- 3 You needn't wait.
- 4 It will rain soon.
- 5 You may leave now if you want to.
- 6 You must be quiet.

- a) prediction
- b) permission
- c) ability
- d) no obligation
- e) total obligation
- f) duty

#### **1.1 B** The first use of modal verbs (2)

1 Modal verbs are not 'complete verbs'. For example, we use verbs like **must** and **can** to refer only to the present or the future:

I must go to the bank now. I must go to the bank tomorrow.

This means we have to make up the 'missing parts' of **must** with **have to**.

So if we want to express the past of must, we say: / had to go to the bank yesterday.

In the same way, we use **be able to** to make up the 'missing parts' of **can** 

2 Other important points about modal verbs:

We can't use them as to-infinitives: *I* want to be able to type very fast. (Not \*to can\*) We do not use the to-infinitive after modals: You *must/mustn't phone*. (Not \*to phone\*) There's no -(e)s in the *3rd* person singular: The boss *can see* you now. (No -s on can)

#### 2. Use suitable forms of have to only when it is impossible to use must.

- 1. You \_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi if you intend to catch the next train.
- 2. Since the new boss took over, we *have had to* change our working methods.

3. We \_\_\_\_\_ talk about this again tomorrow.

4. If you \_\_\_\_\_ bring up a large family, you wouldn't have had so much money to spend.

5. I was late for work this morning because I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the bank first.

6. I (not) \_\_\_\_\_\_ speak French since I was at school.

7. I hate \_\_\_\_\_ wait for people who don't know how to keep appointments.

8. He \_\_\_\_\_ get up early tomorrow morning if he wants to see the sunset.

## **1.1** C The second use of modal verbs

1 The second way we use modals is to express degrees of certainty or uncertainty. We use nine of the modals for this purpose (not shall), but we don't use them in a fixed order. We express the greatest uncertainty with might, the greatest certainty with must/can't. He might be right. He might know the answer, (very uncertain) He could be right. He would know the answer, (fairly certain) He must be right. He must know the answer, (almost certain) He can't be right. He can't know the answer, (almost certain)

*We use* be *or an ordinary verb, not a modal, for 'absolute certainty':* You *are* right. You *know* the answer, (*certain*)

2 In their second use, modals have only two forms:

- present form: He must be right. He must know the answer, (now)

- perfect or past form: He must have been right. He must have known the answer, (then)

3. Put 'certain', 'almost certain', 'fairly certain' or 'very uncertain' beside these sentences.

1 The phone's ringing. It's Roland. *certain* 

- 2 The phone's ringing. It might be Ronald.
- 3 A car is parking outside our house. That will be the Kennedys.
- 4 A car is parking outside our house. That must be the Kennedys.
- 5 From your description, the person you met would have been my cousin, Jeff.

6 From your description, the person you met can't have been my cousin, Jeff.

- 7 If I have understood you correctly, Jeff should be my second cousin.
- 8 Are you saying it mightn't be possible for me to get a visa to visit the USA?
- 9 If he spent five years in America, he must speak English, I suppose.

## 1.1 D Context

# 4. Put in am, can, can't, couldn't, have had to, haven't been able to, may, must, must be or must have.

## REMEMBER ME?

There was a knock at the door. I opened it and saw a stranger. 'Hullo, Fred,' he cried. '*May / Can* I come in?' 'How do you know my name?' I asked. 'We met ten years ago on a ferry-boat and you gave me your card.' 'You \_\_\_\_\_ mistaken,' I said. 'No, I \_\_\_\_\_

not,' the stranger said. He produced my card: Fred Ames. I \_\_\_\_\_ given it to him ten years ago, but I \_\_\_\_\_ remember it! 'I \_\_\_\_\_ remember you,' I said. 'We exchanged cards years ago,' the stranger said. 'You said, "You \_\_\_\_\_ come and stay with us for as long as you like any time you're in England." I'm sorry I \_\_\_\_\_ wait so many years before coming to visit you. I've been so busy, I \_\_\_\_\_, but here I am at last! Better late than never! I've just arrived on the ferry. My wife and children are in the car and we wonder if we \_\_\_\_\_ stay with you for a month.'

## **1.2.** Uses of modals to express ability and inability

## 1.2 A Expressing present and past ability: 'can' and 'be able to'

1 We can use can (or sometimes am/is/are able to) to describe natural or learned ability: I can ( lam able to) run *1500 metres in 5 minutes*, (natural ability)
I can't (*I* am not able to/I am unable to) drive, (learned ability)

- 2 We can use could, couldn't or was/were (not) able *to* to describe 'general ability in the past': I could (*I* was able to) run very fast when I was a boy. (i.e. general ability)
- **3** We use was/were able to or managed to (Not \*could\*) to describe the successful completion of a specific action:

We were able to (we managed to) get tickets for the match yesterday. (Not "could")

4 However, we can use couldn't *to* describe a specific action not successfully completed: *We* couldn't get *tickets for the match yesterday*. Or:

We weren't able to/didn't manage to get tickets for the match yesterday.

## **5.** Supply *can, can't, could, couldn't, was/were able to, managed to.* Alternatives are possible.

1. A good 1500-metre runner <u>can</u> run the race in under four minutes.

- 2. Bill is so unfit he \_\_\_\_\_ run at all!
- 3. Our baby is only nine months and he \_\_\_\_\_ already stand up.
- 4. When I was younger, I \_\_\_\_\_ speak Italian much better than I \_\_\_\_\_ now.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ she speak German very well? – No, she \_\_\_\_\_ speak German at all.

- 6. He \_\_\_\_\_ draw or paint at all when he was a boy, but now he's a famous artist.
- 7. After weeks of training, I \_\_\_\_\_\_ swim a length of the baths underwater.
- 8. It took a long time, but in the end Tony \_\_\_\_\_ save enough to buy his own hi-fi.
- 9. Did you buy any fresh fish in the market? No, I \_\_\_\_\_ get any.
- 10. For days the rescuers looked for the lost climbers in the snow. On the fourth day they saw them and \_\_\_\_\_ reach them without too much trouble.

## **1.2 B 'Can / could' with verbs of perception: 'I can see'**

1 Verbs of perception are verbs like see, hear, smell, etc.

2 When we are describing something that is happening now, we do not use the progressive with these verbs: / see a bird in that tree. (Not "I'm seeing")

3 We often use can + verb in place of the simple present with verbs of

perception:	<i>I can see</i> a bird in that tree. (= <i>I see</i> ) <i>Can you see</i> it? (= <i>Do</i>
you see)	
We often us	se could + verb in place of the simple past with verbs of
perception:	
I looked up,	but <i>couldn't see</i> anything. (= <i>didn't see</i> )

#### 6. Rewrite these sentences using can, can't, could or couldn't.

- 1. Do you see that man over there? <u>Can you see that man over there?</u>
- 2. I smell something burning.
- 3. I understood what he said.
- 4. Did you understand what he said?
- 5. I don't see anyone.
- 6. I didn't understand what he said.

#### **1.2** C Ability in tenses other than the present and the past

Can and could are not 'complete verbs', so we use be able to and sometimes manage to *if, for example, we want to express the future or the present perfect: I'll be able to* pass my driving test after I have had a few lessons. *Not* 'I can/I will can\*

\_\_\_\_\_

#### 7. Supply suitable forms of be able to in these sentences.

- 1. Our teacher says we *will be able to* speak English fluently in a few months.
- 2. I've been trying for hours, but so far I (not) \_\_\_\_\_ get through on the phone.
- 3. If he had asked me earlier, I \_\_\_\_\_ help him.
- 4. I'm sure she would have helped you if she
- 5. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ play table tennis better after a bit of practice.
- 6. He has managed to live in England for years without \_\_\_\_\_\_ speak English.7. I'm practising hard because I want to \_\_\_\_\_\_ pass my driving test first time.
- 8. If I \_\_\_\_\_\_ sing, I would have loved to be an opera singer.

#### **1.2 D** 'Can / could' in place of 'is often' and 'was often'

Instead of: It's often cold in January. We can say: It can be cold in January. *Instead of: He was often* naughty when he was a boy. *We can say: He could be* naughty when he was a boy.

#### 8. *Rewrite these sentences with* can be *or* could be.

- 1. The sea is often rough in the harbour. *The sea can be rough in the harbour.*
- 2. She is bad tempered at times.3. She was often rude when she was a girl.
- 4. It is often cold here in winter.
- 5. He was often helpful when he wanted to be.

#### **1.2 E Context**

\_\_\_\_\_

## *9. Pit in suitable forms which express ability.* JOURNEY"S END

The journey to Western Papua had been very hard. We <u>had not been able to</u> make much progress in the heavy rain and we \_\_\_\_\_\_ only cross rivers with great difficulty. After two month's journey, we \_\_\_\_\_\_ see smoke in the distance and knew we must be near a village. There was another boiling river in front of us, but we \_\_\_\_\_\_ cross it by using a rope bridge we had brought with us. At last we approached the village and wondered how we \_\_\_\_\_\_ communicate with the chief. None of us \_\_\_\_\_\_ speak the local language. Soon, a young, dignified and smiling man approached us. '\_\_\_\_\_\_ you speak English?' I asked hopefully. 'Of course,' the young man replied. 'I was educated at Oxford University. I'm Chief Naga. Welcome to my village!'

## 1.3 Uses of modals to express permission and prohibition1.3 A Asking for permission with 'can', 'could', 'may' and 'might'

We use can, could, may and might to ask for permission, depending on the situation.

1 Can is the commonest and most informal: Can I borrow your umbrella (please)?

2 Could is more polite than can: Could I borrow your umbrella (please)?

3 May is more 'respectful' than can and could: May I borrow your umbrella (please)?

4 Might is the most polite but the least common: Might I borrow your umbrella (please)?

5 We can add possibly and use expressions like Do you think and / wonder if \o make requests even more polite:

Can/Could/May/Might I possibly borrow your umbrella?

Do you think I could/Do you think I might (possibly) borrow your umbrella? I wonder if I could/I wonder if I might (possibly) borrow your umbrella?

## 10. Make suitable requests for permission in these situations.

- 1. You are visiting a close friend and you want to make yourself some coffee. <u>Can I make myself some coffee (please)?</u>
- 2. You are visiting an acquaintance and want to use the lavatory.
- 3. You are at a party given by people you hardly know. You want to see their garden.
- 4. You are visiting people you know reasonably well. You want to make a phone call.
- 5. You are visiting a close friend and want to borrow his new car.

## **1.3 B** Giving and refusing permission / Expressing prohibition

We personally give or refuse permission in everyday situations in the following ways: (can (not)) (Not \*could\*)

You < > watch TV	/ for as long as you like.< (may (not) (Not *might)
We refer to 'some o	other authority' that gives/refuses permission like this:
You can/cannot	or You're allowed to/not allowed to
You can/cannot	<i>or</i> You're permitted to/not permitted to > smoke here.
You mustn't	or You're forbidden to )

11. Rephrase these notices to give or refuse permission. Begin each sentence with You ...

- 1. Thank you for not smoking. <u>You may not smoke.</u>
- 2. No camping or picnicking.
- 3. Fishing strictly forbidden.
- 4. Campers welcome.
- 5. Private Keep out.
- 6. Do not lean out of the window.
- 7. Leave your letter here.
- 8. No stopping.

### **1.3** C Permission / prohibition in tenses other than present and future

May and must are not 'complete verbs', so we use be allowed to to make up their 'missing parts':

**The children** were allowed to watch **TV last night.** (Not "could\*)

#### 12. Supply the correct tense form of be allowed to.

1. The children were allowed to stay home from school yesterday because of the weather.

2. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ never \_\_\_\_\_\_ stay up late when I was very young.

- 3. She \_\_\_\_\_ only \_\_\_\_\_ go to parties in the last few months.
  4. He \_\_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_\_ go home after three hours at the police station.
- 5. Since he was admitted to hospital, we (not) \_\_\_\_\_\_ visit him.

6. His doctor (not) \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_ take any exercise in the year before he died.

## **1.3 D** 'Can' (= ability) and 'can / could' (- have permission, be free to)

We use can/could in the sense of 'am/is/are free to' to refer to the future: Mr Jones can/could see you tomorrow, if you are free. Or Mr Jones is able to see you... But we must use will be able to (not "can/could") to describe future ability: Baby will be able to stand up in two weeks' time. (Not \*can/could'')

13. Replace will be able to with can where possible in the sentences below. 1. She'll be able to drive by the end of next week.

2. We'll be able to go to the seaside tomorrow. We can go to the seaside tomorrow.

- 3. She'll be able to drive you home tomorrow.
- 4. I'll be able to play chess soon.
- 5. I'll be able to play a game of chess with you tomorrow.

6. You will be able to use my computer during the week.

7. You will be able to operate this computer after a bit of practice.

### 1.3 E Context

## *14. Supply suitable forms which express permission, prohibition or ability.* WHAT WOULD YOU ADVISE?

Mrs Wilkins is on a strict diet. '<u>Am I allowed to</u> eat toast and butter for breakfast?' she asked her doctor. 'I'm afraid not, Mrs Wilkins. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ only have half a grapefruit and a glass of water. You certainly \_\_\_\_\_\_ eat any kind of fat and you \_\_\_\_\_\_ eat biscuits or sweets. But don't worry, you \_\_\_\_\_\_ eat what you like after two months of this diet.' Mrs Wilkins was very determined and took a lot of exercises as well. After two months' diet and exercise she said to her husband, 'I still \_\_\_\_\_\_ touch my toes as I \_\_\_\_\_\_ before we married.' 'Don't worry, my love,' he said kindly. 'Perhaps your fingernails were longer in those days!'

#### **1.4** Use of modals to express certainty and possibility

## **1.4 A Certainty and possibility**

- 1 If we are certain of our facts, we use be or any full verb:
- Jane *is* at home. Jane *works* at home, (*certain facts*)
- 2 *If we are referring to possibility, we use* may, might *or* could + be/have been: Jane *may/might/could be* at home now.

She *may/might/could have been* at home yesterday. *Or we use* may, might, could + *full verb:* 

ane *may/might/could work (or... may/might/could be working)* at home. She *may/might/could have worked (or... have been working)* at home yesterday

#### 15. Read these sentences and write C (= Certain) or P (= Possible) against each one.

- 1. My boss is away on holiday. <u>C</u>
- 2. His wife may be with him. \_\_\_\_
- 3. She will be back next week. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. He could reply by the weekend.
- 5. He wasn't here last week.
- 6. She might have been to Paris.

- 7. She's returned from Paris.
- 8. He could be swimming right now.

9. He'll be back in a good mood.

10. He might leave this evening.

11. They've been staying at a big hotel.

13. He borrowed my ladder.

12. They may have been dancing all night.

14. He could have borrowed my ladder.

## 16. Turn these 'certain' statements into 'possible / less than certain' statements.

1. The is at nome now. <u>The may / might / could be at nome now.</u>
2. He will be at home tomorrow
3. He was at home yesterday.
4. She leaves at 9.
5. She will leave tomorrow
6. She has left
7. She left last night
8. She will have left by 9
9. He is working today.
10. He will be working today
11. He was working today.
12. He has been working all day.

#### 17. Write uncertain answers to these questions.

- 1. Where's Jim today? <u>*He may / might / could be at home.*</u>

#### **1.4 B** Certain and uncertain answers to questions

1	A 'certain' question may produce an 'uncertain' answer:
	Does he like <i>fish?- He</i> might (do). <i>He</i> may (do). <i>He</i> could (do). <i>He</i> may not.
2	An 'uncertain' question may produce a 'certain' answer:
	Can he still be <i>working? - Yes</i> , he is.
3	We use <i>be</i> and <i>have been</i> to answer questions with <i>be</i> :
	Is he ill? - He may be. Was he ill? - He may have been. (Not *he may")
4	We use <i>do/done</i> to replace other verbs, though this is optional:
	Will you catch the early train? - I may ./I may do.
	Has he received my message? - He could have./He could have done.

5 We also answer M/Ai-questions with 'certainty' or 'uncertainty': What's his name?- It's Smith, (certain) It may/might be Smith, (uncertain) What was his name? - It was Smith, (certain) It may/might have been Smith, (uncertain)

#### 18. Give uncertain answers to these questions.

 1. Does she still live in London? (Yes), she may (do).

 2. Where does she live?

 3. Did he catch the early train?

 4. Which train did she catch?

 5. Are they still living abroad?

 6. Where are they living?

 7. Has he finished work?

 8. When did he finish work?

 9. Will you leave tomorrow?

 10. When will you leave?

## 1.4 C Context

## **19.** Put in suitable forms which express uncertainty and possibility. OLDER AND WISER?

We make decisions all the time, but we <u>can</u> never be certain whether we are right or wrong. The work you choose to do \_\_\_\_\_ be suitable for you or it \_\_\_\_\_ not. The person you marry \_\_\_\_\_ be a perfect match or \_\_\_\_\_ be the worst possible choice. Suppose you have saved money for the future. You \_\_\_\_\_ invest it wisely so that it grows in value or you \_\_\_\_\_ lose the lot in a foolish moment. You think you have a healthy diet, but the food you eat \_\_\_\_\_ actually be very bad for you and \_\_\_\_\_ be the cause of terrible illness. Perhaps you travel a lot by plane. All the flights you make are routine, but one of them \_\_\_\_\_ be your last. Decisions! Decisions! But we don't learn from experience. Experience is the quality that allows us to go on making the same mistakes with more confidence!

## **1.5** Uses of modals to express deduction

## **1.5 A Certainty or deduction?**

1 We express certainty with **be** or any full verb: **He** is **here. He** lives **here. He** is leaving.

2 We express deduction with must be/can't be, must have been, can't/couldn't have been: He must be at home. He can't be out. He must have been at home yesterday. or with verbs other than be: He must live abroad. He must have lived abroad. 20. Read these sentences and write C (=Certainty) or D (=Deduction) against each one.

- 1. John Wright is a man of action. C
- 2. He was in the Galapagos ten years ago.
- 3. Now he lives in an enormous house.
- 4. He is writing a book.
- 5. He has been writing this book since he n came back from the Galapagos.
- 6. He must be writing about his travels.
- 7. He must have seen the giant tortoises and the iguanas on the Galapagos.
- 8. He can't have seen any elephants on the Galapagos.
- 9. He can't have been working very hard on his book.
- 10. He must have taken a lot of photos while he was on the islands.
- 11. He must have done a lot of research for his book.
- 12. He must enjoy life.

## 1.5 B Two kinds of 'must be'

We use must be in the present to express deduction: You haven't eaten for hours. You must be hungry!
 The negative of must be (= deduction) is can't be, not 'mustn't be\*: You've only just eaten. You can't be hungry again! (Not 'mustn't be\*)
 We can also use must (be) to express total obligation [> 11.1A]: This is a hospital. You must be quiet.
 The negative of must (be) (= total obligation) is mustn't (be) (= prohibition): You mustn't be noisy outside a hospital.

21. a) Supply must be, can't be, or mustn't be.

## b) Write D (= Deduction) or O (= Obligation) beside each sentence.

- 1. The meeting is at 10 o'clock sharp and you *mustn't be* late. O
- 2. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the station ten minutes before the departure of the train.
- 3. The children \_\_\_\_\_\_ tired already! We've only been walking for ten minutes.
- 4. The children \_\_\_\_\_\_ thirsty. They haven't had a drink for hours.
- 5. Did you hear that? It \_\_\_\_\_\_ someone walking about in our garden. \_\_\_\_

6. I don't recognize the handwriting on this envelope. It \_\_\_\_\_ from anyone we know. \_\_\_\_

- 7. Your handwriting \_\_\_\_\_\_ clear, otherwise no one will be able to read it. \_\_\_\_
- 8. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ a nuisance when you're a guest in someone's house.
- 9. Don't panic! We \_\_\_\_\_ late for the train. It doesn't leave till 10.05. \_\_\_\_
- 10. We \_\_\_\_\_ late for the train or we'll miss our connection. \_\_\_\_\_

## 1.5 C 'Must have been', 'can't / couldn't have been'; 'had to be / didn't have to be'

- 1 We express deduction about the past with must have been: You hadn't eaten for hours. You must have been hungry!
- 2 *The negative of* must have been *is* can't/couldn't have been, *not* 'mustn't have been": You had already eaten. You *can't/couldn't* have been hungry! (*Not* "mustn't have been")
- 3 Must(= *total obligation*) *is not a 'complete verb'* [> 11.1B]. We use had *to in the past:* The meeting was at 10 this morning and I *had to be* there. (*Not* "must have been")
- 4 *The negative of* had to *is* didn't have to: It was a holiday yesterday, so I *didn't have to be* at work. (*Not* "mustn't have been")

## 22. Supply must have been, can't / couldn't have been, have to / had to (be), didn't have to (be).

1. He knows a lot about flying planes. He *must have been* a pilot when he was young.

2. Vera \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at the supermarket this morning. I didn't see her there.

3. John \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at the bank till 10, so he only arrived here five minutes ago.

4. When \_\_\_\_\_\_ (she) \_\_\_\_\_ at the hospital? – Early this morning.

5. We had enough foreign currency left at the end of the holiday, so I \_\_\_\_\_ buy any more.

6. Monica Knew exactly what to do. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ tell her twice.

7. There are so many nice things for tea, I think you \_\_\_\_\_\_ expecting us.

8. There \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ an accident on South Street because the road is closed off.

9. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ waiting long. After all, I'm only five minutes late.

10. When I was a boy we \_\_\_\_\_\_ sitting at our desks working before the boss got in.

11. I left a message on your answer phone last night. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ out.

12. The fire alarm went and we \_\_\_\_\_\_ out of the building in two minutes.

## 1.5 D Context

# 23. Put in must be / must have been, can't be / can't have been, had to be or didn't have to be.

## THE MYSTERY OF THE TALKING SHOE

Tracy Evans <u>didn't have to be</u> at work till 10, so she ignored her alarm clock. But she woke up with a start when she heard a strange sound coming from her wardrobe! What was it? It \_\_\_\_\_\_ a mouse, Tracy thought. No, it \_\_\_\_\_\_. She knew there were no mice in her room. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ careful, Tracy said to herself as she opened the wardrobe. There, in front of her, was the lovely pair of wedge-shaped sandals she had bought the day before. Then she heard the sound again! 'It \_\_\_\_\_\_ coming from my sandals!' she cried. She picked them up and, sure enough, one of them was 'talking!' Tracy \_\_\_\_\_\_ at work at ten, but she still had enough time to visit Mr Lucas, her shoemaker. He removed the wooden heel and they were both amazed to see a white larva eating the wood. Mr Pope, of the Natural History Museum, solved the mystery.

'These shoes \_\_\_\_\_ (import) from Brazil. An insect \_\_\_\_\_ (lay) its eggs in the tree from which the shoes were made,' he explained.

## **1.6** Uses of modals for offers, requests and suggestions

## **1.6 A Offering things and substances**

Offering: e.g. Would/Wouldn't you like a sandwich/some coffee? Yes/No responses: e.g. Yes, I'd like one/some, please. No, thank you.

## 24. Make offers for the following things and substances.

a sandwich, some coffee, a slice of toast, some potatoes, an orange, some fruit

1. <u>Would you like a sandwich?</u>	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

#### **1.6 B** Requests for things and substances

*Requesting: e.g. Can/Could/May/Might I* have a sandwich/some sugar, please? *Yes/No responses: e.g.* Of course you can/may. No, you can't/may not, I'm afraid.

#### 25. Make requests for the things and substances.

a sandwich, some coffee, a slice of toast, some potatoes, an orange, some fruit

1. <u>Can I have a sandwich, please?</u>

2.	 
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	

## 1.6 C Making suggestions, inviting actions

*Making suggestions, inviting actions: e.g. Would/Wouldn't you like to* come with us? *Yes/No responses: e.g.* Yes, I'd like to/love to. No, I'd prefer not to, thank you.

#### 26. Make suggestions / invite actions for the following situations.

- 1. Your friend has nowhere to stay for the night. <u>Would you like to stay with me?</u>
- 2. You want your friends to join you for a meal.

### 3. You want your friend to come on an excursion.

4. You want your friends to have a holiday with you.

#### **1.6D** Requesting others to do things for you

**Requesting others to do things for you: e.g. Will/Would you** please **open** the door **for me? Yes/No responses: e.g.** Yes, of course I will. No, I'm afraid I can't at the moment.

#### 27. Make requests for the following situations. You want someone to ...

hold the door open for you. <u>Will / Would you hold the door open for me, please?</u>
 dial a number for you.

3. translate a letter for you.

4. deliver some flowers for you.

#### **1.6 E** Offering to do things for others

Offering to do things for others: e.g. Shall I carry that for you? Yes/No responses: e.g. Can/Could you? That's very kind of you. No, thank you.

#### 28. Make offers for the following situations.

- 1. An old lady clearly wants to put her large suitcase on the luggage rack. *Shall I put the suitcase on the rack (for you)?*
- 2. A young woman is shivering and the window is open.
- 3. Your friend accidentally drops some sheets of paper on the floor.

#### 1.6 F Making suggestions that include the speaker

*Making suggestions that include the speaker: e.g. Shall we go* for a swim? *Yes/No responses: e.g.* Yes, let's./Yes, let's, shall we? No, I'd rather we didn't.

#### 29. Make suggestions to a friend for the following situations. You feel like ...

- 1. driving to the coast. <u>Shall we drive to the coast?</u>
- 2. having a meal out this evening.
- 3. travelling first class.
- 4. having a holiday in Bahia.

## 1.6 G Context

#### 30. Put in the missing requests, offers, etc.

### PLEASE BE NICE TO NIGEL!

'Please be nice to Nigel', his mother said to Jenny, the baby sitter, before she went out. Jenny is doing her best.

JENNY: <i>Would you</i> like something to eat, Nigel? NIGEL: No!					
JENNY:	_ build a castle for you, Nigel?	NIGEL: No!			
JENNY: I'm cold.	shut the window for me?	NIGEL: No!			
JENNY:	like to watch TV with me, Nigel?	NIGEL: No!			
JENNY:	_borrow your crayons, Nigel?	NIGEL: No!			
JENNY:	_ play a game together?	NIGEL: No!			
JENNY:	get a glass of water for you, Nigel?	NIGEL: No!			
JENNY:	get a glass of water for me?	NIGEL: No!			
JENNY:	you like to go to the moon, Nigel?	NIGEL: Yes!			
JENNY: And I'd like to send you there in a rocket!					

## 1.7 Expressing wishes , etc. : 'I wish', 'if only', 'it's (high) time'1.7 A Present and past reference with 'I wish', 'if only' and 'it's (high) time'

After (I) wish, if only, it's (high) time and it's (about) time, we 'go one tense back':

1 The past tense refers to the present: / wish I had *a better watch!* (i.e. NOW)

2 The past perfect tense refers to the past: If only you had asked *me first!* (i.e. THEN)

#### 31. Tick the sentences that refer to 'present' or 'past'.

	present	past
1. I wish I had a better watch!		
2. If only I knew the answer to the problem!		
3. It's high time / about time he learnt more		
manners!		
4. I wish you hadn't done that!		
5. If only you had phoned me yesterday!		

#### **1.7 B** Expressing wishes and regrets with 'I wish' and 'if only'

1 We often use / wish for things that might (still) happen:

*I wish I knew* the answer! (= it's possible I might find out the answer)

If only is stronger. We use it to express regret for things that can (now) never happen:

If only your mother were alive now! (Of course, I wish is also possible.)

- 2 We may use the simple past of be after wish and if only, especially in everyday speech: *I wish I was* on holiday now. *If only Tessa was* here now!
- 3 If we want to be more formal, we use were in all persons: *I wish I were* on holiday now. *If only Tessa were* here!
- 4 We may use the past perfect of be for things that can never happen:

*I wish I had been* on holiday last week. *If only Tessa had been* here yesterday! 5 We use the past or past perfect forms of other verbs:

*I wish I knew* the answer to your question. *I wish I had known* then what I know now!

## 32. Express wishes and regrets about these situations. Refer to yourself where possible.

- 1. You're not very fit. <u>I wish / If only I was / were fit / fitter!</u>
- 2. It's very hot today.

#### 3. It's raining.

4. You were too impatient.

5. You wasted a lot of time watching TV.

6. They don't have a lot of friends.

7. We didn't lock the back door!

8. He is abroad.

9. Jane has read your letter.

10. John didn't take your advice.

### 1.7 C 'Would' and 'could' after 'I wish' and 'if only'

We must use could, not would, after / and we. Compare: I can't swim. -» I wish I could swim. We weren't together! -» I wish we could have been together. We sometimes use / wish you (he, she, etc.) would(n't) like an imperative: (I am making a lot of noise!) -» I wish you wouldn't make so much noise! (He is making a lot of noise!) —▶ I wish he would be quiet!

33. Supply would, wouldn't or could.

- 1. I wish they <u>would</u> be quiet.
- 2. We wish you \_\_\_\_\_ drive too fast.
- 3. We wish we \_\_\_\_\_ come to London with you.
- 4. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ have seen the film with them.
- 5. We really wish she \_\_\_\_\_ change her mind and come on holiday with us.
- 6. If only we \_\_\_\_\_ have good weather like this the whole year.

## 1.7 D 'It's (high) time' and 'it's (about) time'

We use It's time, It's high time and It's about time to express present or future wishes, or to

*express our impatience about things that haven't happened yet:* Kim can't even boil an egg. -1 know. *It's time/high time/about time* she learnt to cook!

#### 34. Respond to these sentences with It's high time or It's about time.

- 1. John and Julie have been engaged now for over ten years. <u>It's high time they got married!</u>
- 2. We haven't been out for an evening together for ages, have we?
- 3. It's very late. You should both really go now.
- 4. The boys' room is terribly untidy.

#### **1.7 E Context**

#### 35. Put in the right forms for the words in brackets.

#### HAVING A WONDERFUL TIME! WISH YOU WERE HERE!

While trying to sail round the world in a small boat, Harry, Sandy and Joe were shipwrecked one night. 'I wish there ( be) <u>was / were</u> an island nearby,' Harry said. By morning, they were washed up on to a desert island. For six months they lived on fish, nuts and fruit. One day, they saw a bottle on the shore. 'If only it (contain) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a not or something!' Sandy said. They opened it and a genie appeared. 'It's high time someone (open) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ that bottle!' the genie gasped. 'I'm so grateful, I'll give you one wish each. You first,' the genie said, pointing to Harry. 'That's easy,' Harry said. 'I wish I (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ with my family.' And (whoosh!) he disappeared. 'Me too,' Sandy said. 'If only I (can be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in dear old Glasgow.' And (whoosh!) off he went. 'And you, sir?' the genie asked Joe. 'I wish I (have) \_\_\_\_\_\_ my friends back!' Joe said.

## 1.8 Expressing preferences: 'would rather' and 'would sooner'1.8 A Expressing personal preference with 'I'd rather' / 'I'd sooner'

*1* We use would rather and would sooner in exactly the same way to express preference. We can refer to the present or the future:

*I'd rather/I'd sooner* be a builder than an architect. *Or we can refer to the past:* 

If I could choose again, *I'd rather/sooner have been* a builder than an architect.

2 We can omit the verb in negative short answers:

Are you coming with us?- No, *I'd rather/sooner not*.

Would you rather have been a builder? - No, I'd rather/sooner not (have been).

#### 36. Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. Which would you sooner <u>be</u>? A pilot or a passenger? (be)

2. My career is nearly over, but I'd much rather \_\_\_\_\_ in the navy than in the army. (be)

3. If I had lived in the past, I'd sooner \_\_\_\_\_ a peasant than a king. (be)

4. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ in the eighteenth century than in the nineteenth century. (live)

- 5. I like my job. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ my living as a teacher than anything else. (make)
- 6. I wish my job were secure. I'd sooner \_\_\_\_\_ worry about it. (not have to)
- 7. Jim had to break the bad news to her. I know he'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ do it. (not have to)

### **1.8 B** Expressing preferences about other people's actions

1 We can refer to other people after I'd rather or I'd sooner. Compare: I'd rather leave on an earlier train. (- I'm referring to myself)

I'd rather Jack (etc.) left on an earlier train.

2 We use the past tense form after I'd rather to refer to the present or future. Compare: I'd rather be happy. I'd rather not sit next to her. (= now - I'm referring to myself) I'd rather she were/was happy. (= now) I'd rather she didn't sit next to me. (= now)

**3** We use the past perfect form after **I'd rather** \o refer to past time. Compare:

I'd rather have been **present.** (= then - I'm referring to myself) I'd rather you had been **present.** (then) I'd rather you hadn't told me **about it.** (then)

#### 37. Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- 1. You might be late for the meeting. I'd rather you *caught* an earlier train. (catch)
- 2. I won't be home till very late. I'd sooner you \_\_\_\_\_ for me. (not wait up)
- 3. He took a risk investing money with them. I'd rather he \_\_\_\_\_ it. (not do)

4. I don't mind your borrowing my ladder, but I'd sooner you \_\_\_\_\_ me first. (ask)

5. I know our daughter is enjoying herself, but I'd rather she \_\_\_\_\_ here than abroad. (be)

6. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ present when we signed the agreement. (be)

## 1.8 C 'I'd rather he didn't', etc.

We generally omit the main part of the verb in short responses:

*1 negative responses:* Frank is going to buy a motorbike. - I'd rather he didn't. I've told everyone about it. - I'd rather you hadn't.

*2 affirmative responses: Frank won't give up* **his present job. - I'd rather** *he did. I haven't told* **anyone about it. - I'd rather** *you had.* 

**3** We do not have to repeat the main verb in a complete sentence: You always go without me and I'd rather you didn't.

#### 38. Supply negative short responses or continuations to these sentences.

1. Joan wants to become self-employed. <u>I'd rather / sooner she didn't.</u>

2. I've told everyone about it.

3. Susan has moved her account to another bank.

4. Bill takes sleeping pills.

5. I often drive fast.

6. Frank went to live in Australia last year.

7. Our neighbours keep a large dog.

8. Our neighbours have cut down all the trees at the back of their garden.

9. I know you have already booked our holidays, but \_\_\_\_\_

10. Jane cycles to work every day, but \_\_\_\_\_

11. Alan retired early last year, but \_\_\_\_\_

### 1.8 D Context

## **39.** Put in the missing preferences. KNOW YOURSELF!

Most parents (their children not decide) would rather their children didn't decide to join the acting profession because it is so hard to earn a living. They (their children choose) \_\_\_\_\_ secure, well-paid jobs. But if you ask actors themselves. they always tell you there is nothing they (do)actor is person who An a (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a different man or woman. An actor (talk, walk, and like someone else. That's behave) what acting is about. Many actors (be called) \_ something other than their real names. The great American comic actor Claude William Dukenfield (be called) W.C. Fields, which \_\_\_\_\_ was the name he adopted when he became an actor. Fields was eccentric and (live) \_\_\_\_\_ in a world in which there were no dogs or children. He used to wear a funny top hat and carry a walking-stick. He loved to pretend to be other people in real life as well. He opened bank accounts all over America using comic names. He died in 1946 and the epitaph he wrote for his tombstone clearly expressed a healthy preference for life: 'On the whole, I (be) in Philadelphia!'

## 1.9 'It's advisable ...' / 'It's necessary ...'

## 1.9 A 'It's advisable' – 'It's necessary': 'a scale of choice'

We can say what, in our opinion, is advisable or necessary on a scale which shows how much choice there is. We use the following words to give advice or say what is necessary:

1 Should and ought to (= in my opinion it's advisable, but there is some choice): You should see a doctor. You ought to vote in the next election.

(= That's my advice, but ignore it if you want to.)

2 Had better is stronger, even a warning: You'd better see a doctor.

(= That's my urgent advice. There may be consequences if you ignore it.)

3 Have to, have got to (less formal) and must (= in my opinion, you have no choice): You have to/have got to/must see a doctor.

(= That's the strongest advice I can give you. Don't ignore it!)

40. Tick the sentences that mean 'it is / it was advisable' or 'it is / it was necessary'.

advisable	necessary
	advisable

## 1.9 B 'Must', 'have to' and 'have got to'

1 We often use must, have to and have got to in place of each other, but sometimes not. 2 We tend to prefer must.

- when we refer to ourselves (with I / we): I really must weed this garden.

- with you to express urgency: You must phone home at once.

- in public notices, etc.: Cyclists must dismount.

- (= *Can't you stop yourself?*): *Must you* interrupt?

- pressing invitations or advice: You must come and see us. You must repair that fence.

3 We often use have to (or have got to) to refer to outside authority: /

have (got) to pay my road tax soon.

#### 41. Supply the forms must or have (got) to which 'feel right' in these sentences. Sometimes more than one form is possible.

- 1. We really *must* do something about having this house decorated.
- 2. We \_\_\_\_\_ pay this electricity bill by the end of the week.
- 3. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ write and let us know you've arrived safely.
- 4. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ be at my desk by 9.00 every morning.
- 5. We always \_\_\_\_\_\_ clock in when we arrive at work.
- 6. ALL VISITORS \_\_\_\_\_\_ REPORT TO THE DUTY OFFICER.
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_ you always slam the door when you come in?
- 8. You really \_\_\_\_\_\_ come and see the new extension to our house some day.

## **1.9** C Expressing necessity in other tenses

*1* Must can refer to the present or the future:

I must speak to him today. I must speak to him tomorrow.

2 Must is not a 'complete verb', so we use have to to make up its 'missing parts'

*I shall/will have to phone* her tomorrow, (*or* I *must phone* her tomorrow.) (*future*) *I had to spend* the day in a meeting, (*past*)

*I have had to* tell you before, (*present perfect*)

I am having to/I have been having to get up earlier this year, (progressive forms)

**3** Had to shows that we couldn't avoid doing something: I had to leave at six. (and I did) Should have shows we've failed to do something: I should have left at six. (and I didn't)

#### 42. Use a construction with have to in place of the words in italics.

1. It will be necessary for him to try harder if he wants to win the prize. <u>He will have to</u>

- 2. It has been necessary for them to save hard to buy their new hi-fi.
- 3. Because of the snow she has been finding it necessary to walk to college.
- 4. *It had already been necessary for us* to clear the office floor twice before the boss asked us to clear it again.
- 5. It would have been necessary for me to pay twice as much to travel first class.
- 6. We are finding it necessary to cut back on staff because of a shortage of orders.

#### 1.9 D Context

## 43. Put in *will have to, must, having to, has to, should, had to, have to and should have.* Use each one at least once.

#### ARIJABA!

The Post Office in Britain is famous for getting letters and parcels to their destinations. The problem is that we the public <u>have to</u> observe the rules. For example, we \_\_\_\_\_\_ put a stamp on a letter. If we don't, the recipient \_\_\_\_\_\_ pay double. We often see the sign ALL LETTERS \_\_\_\_\_\_ BE CORRECTLY ADDRESSED. These days, this means \_\_\_\_\_\_ use postcodes. If you didn't use a postcode, it's no good complaining that your letter \_\_\_\_\_\_ arrived sooner. Parcels are a problem because they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ be correctly packaged. If Aunt Sophie is going to send you jar of your favourite jam, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ wrap it up well. The most important thing we \_\_\_\_\_\_ do is to address our letters and parcels legibly and correctly. This means clear hand writing and correct spelling. What we \_\_\_\_\_\_ do and what we actually do are often miles apart. Recently, the Post Office \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ deliver a letter which showed a name followed by the word ARIJABA. What is this, do you think? Arabic? Hindustani? Wrong both times! Say it out loud and you'll see it's just plain (misspelt!) English: HARWICH HARBOUR!

#### 1.10 'It isn't advisable ...' / It isn't necessary ...' / 'It's forbidden ...'

#### 1.10 A 'It isn't advisable' – 'it's forbidden': 'a scale for choice'

We can say what, in our opinion, is not advisable, or what is forbidden on a scale which shows how much choice there is. We use the following words:

*I* Shouldn't *and* oughtn't to (= *in my opinion it isn't advisable, but there is some choice):* You *shouldn't drive* too fast. You *oughtn't to drive* too fast.

(= That's my advice, but ignore it if you want to.)

- **2** Had better not is stronger, even a warning: You'd better not lose your passport. (= That's my urgent advice. There may be consequences if you ignore it.)
- 3 Can't and mustn't (= you have no choice: it's forbidden:

You *can't stop* on a motorway. You *mustn't stop* on a motorway. (= *it's against the* law)

#### 44. Match A and B to show the effect of the verbs. A

B

- 1. You mustn't park near a zebra crossing. b
- 2. You shouldn't eat so much chocolate cake.
- a) 'not advisable' warning
- b) 'forbidden' law

d) 'not possible'

- c) 'not advisable' personal
- 3. You can't use that footpath. It's closed.
- 4. You had better not be late for the lecture.

## 1.10 B 'Mustn't', 'needn't', 'don't have to', 'haven't got to'

*1* Must, have to, have got to generally mean the same in the affirmative. But mustn't never means the same as don't have to/haven't got to.

- 2 Mustn't means 'it's forbidden': Life belts must not be removed, (no choice)
- **3** We can use needn't, don't have to and haven't got to in place of each other to mean 'it isn't necessary': I needn't/don't have to/haven't got to go to the office tomorrow, (choice)

## **45.** Supply must or needn't / don't have to / haven't got to.

- 1. You don't have to work such long hours. You won't earn any more.
- 2. They \_\_\_\_\_\_ wear a uniform. It's not obligatory.
- 3. She \_\_\_\_\_ leave the office last. She can go when she's ready.
- 4. You really \_\_\_\_\_\_ waste money like that. It worries your parents.
- 5. Visitors \_\_\_\_\_ enter the laboratories without permission.
- 6. We \_\_\_\_\_\_ always wear protective clothing in the factory.
- 7. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ go to the party if you don't want to. Nobody's forcing you.
- 8. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ do the job today, as long as it gets done some time this week.
- 9. Surely we \_\_\_\_\_ leave home yet. It's far too early to go to the station.
- 10. Passengers \_\_\_\_\_\_ smoke in the toilets.

11. 'Are you going to read the report?' - 'No, I \_\_\_\_\_. It's confidential.'
12. 'Are you going to read the report?' - 'No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I already know what it says.'

- 13. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ attend the meeting tomorrow. It's for union officials only.
- 14. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ attend the meeting tomorrow. It's not important.
- 15. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ forget to pay the electricity bill, or we'll be cut off.
- 16. We worry about tom. He's just phoned to say he's all right.

## 1.10 C 'Needn't have', 'didn't have to', 'didn't need to'

*1 These sentences mean 'I went there, but it wasn't necessary': I needn't have gone* to the office yesterday (but I went).

I didn't have to/ didn't need to go to the office yesterday (but I went), (have and need are stressed in speech)

2 Compare didn't have to and didn't need to, without stress:

*I didn't have to go* to the office yesterday. I *didn't need to go* to the office yesterday. (= *I knew in advance it wasn't necessary to go to the office and I didn't go.*)

## 46. Supply needn't have or didn't have to and the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I <u>needn't have phoned</u> the plumber. I learnt later that John had already phoned him. (phone)

2. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the plumber. I knew John had already phoned him. (phone)

3. You \_\_\_\_\_\_ your umbrella after all. It hasn't rained. (bring)

4. The forecast was for fine weather so I knew I \_\_\_\_\_ my umbrella. (bring)

5. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ these clothes. I didn't know they had already been washed. (wash)

6. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ a meal last night because we went out and the food I prepared was uneaten. (cook)

## 1.10 D 'Shouldn't have' and 'oughtn't to have'

We often use shouldn't have (done) or oughtn't to have (done) to criticize our own actions or someone else's: I/You shouldn't have paid/oughtn't to have paid the plumber in advance.

**47.** *Respond to these sentences with shouldn't have done that or oughtn't to have done that.* 

1. I had to stop on the motorway. <u>You shouldn't have done that.</u>

- 2. John read your letter.
- 3. Frank and Jane sat in the sun all day.
- 4. Jane left the front door unlocked.
- 5. I borrowed your car this morning.

## 1.10 E Context

## **48.** *Put in didn't need to, must not, shouldn't have and should have.* HOW TO CATCH YOUR MAN

'Candidates <u>must not</u> attempt more than four questions.' The young candidate for the law exam was very well-prepared and \_\_\_\_\_\_ be told what to do. The results were brilliant. The paper achieved the third highest score out of 7,000 papers! But the examiners were puzzled. Mr Paul Blake \_\_\_\_\_\_ achieved such a high score. This

candidate had failed this exam three times already. Then the truth became known. The candidate was not Mr Paul Blake, as it \_\_\_\_\_\_ been. His wife had gone instead. Mrs Alison Blake, a brilliant lawyer, had dressed up as a man. The fraud was discovered because as examiner had noticed that the candidate was visibly pregnant!

## 1.11 Modals to express habit: 'used to', 'will' and 'would' 1.11 A The form of 'used to'

- 1 Used to *is a simple past form only. If you want to say 'I am in the habit of, you must use the simple present: I get up* early every day. (*Not* I *use* to get up early\*)
- 2 We often use do and did+ use (Not \*used\*) to form questions and negatives: Did you use to smoke? I didn't use to smoke. (Not \*Did you used to\* I didn't used to\*) We also use never to form the negative: I never used to smoke. (Used not to is
- rare.)
  3 Note the use of did: He used to live in Manchester, didn't he? (rather than usedn't he?) Did you use to live here? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't. He used to live here and so did I.

## 49. Supply the missing forms in the following.

- 1. She used to be a singer, <u>didn't</u> she?
- 2. He never used to have grey hair, \_\_\_\_\_ he?
- 3. We \_\_\_\_\_\_ enjoy physics, did we? (not / used to)
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_\_ smoke when you were young? (you / used to)
- 5. Did you use to smoke? Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. He used to work here and so \_\_\_\_\_ I.
- 7. Where \_\_\_\_\_ live? (you / used to)
- 8. You \_\_\_\_\_ (not / used to) eat so much.

## 1.11 B Uses of 'used to'

1 We use the simple past or used to to refer to past habit.

We need a time reference with the simple past, but not with used to:

I *collected* stamps *when I was a child*. I *used to collect* stamps (when I was a child). (*Not I* was collecting stamps when I was a child\*)

2 We use used to to make a contrast between past and present with expressions like: out now ..., but not any more, but not any longer:

I used to eat a large breakfast, but I don't any longer.

**3** Used to *can also refer to past states:* 

She used to be very punctual (but she isn't any more).

## 50. Fill the blanks with forms of used to or the past progressive (e.g. was leaving).

1. We <u>used to go</u> for long walks in the country when my father was alive. (go)

2. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ getting up early when I was very young. In fact, I still don't like it. (like)

3 you	eating vegetables when you were young? (like)
4. I	_ drive to get to work, but I don't any longer. (have to)
5. I never	Sundays, but I do now. (enjoy)
6. I	_ a bath when you phoned me. (have)
7. She	an employee at the post office before she started her own business.
(be)	
8. There	open fields all around our town when I was a boy. (be)
9. John and I	abroad last year. (work)
10 it	here yesterday? (rain)

## 1.11 C 'Would' in place of 'used to' and in place of the simple past

When we are 'remembering the past', we sometimes use would in place of used to. First we set the scene with used to, then we continue with would:

When I was a boy we always *spent/used to spend* our holidays on a farm. We *would* get up at 5 and *we'd* help milk the cows. Then *we'd* return to the kitchen for breakfast.

51. Underline instances where we could use would in place of the simple past or used to.

From the time he was very young, Gerald used to spend all his spare time collecting birds, animals and insects of all kinds. Every morning he <u>used to</u> get up early and go first to the beach. There he caught small crabs and sometimes small fishes, which he put into a large jar and took home with him. On the way, he always used to go to an ruined fisherman's cottage where he was often lucky enough to find some unusual insect that he had never seen before.

## 1.11 D 'Will / would' to describe ;unusual behaviour'

We sometimes use will in place of the simple present and would in place of the simple past to refer to a person's 'usual behaviour':

In fine weather *he will often sit* in the sun for hours. (= *he often sits*) As he grew old, *he would often talk* about his war experiences. (= *he often talked*)

#### 52. Use a phrase with will or would in place of the words in italics.

1. She always used to tell us a story before we went to bed. would always tell

2. She *still tells* us a story occasionally.

3. They only used to discuss family matters with the priest.

4. He's very good, you know. He *plays* with that toy for hours on end.

5. When he needed extra money, he *used to* work overtime.

6. She *doesn't* always tell the truth, I'm afraid.

#### 1.11 E Context

## 53. Put in appropriate forms of the past, used to, will or would. Alternatives are possible.

#### WATER, WATER, EVERYWHERE!

The thing I remember most about my childhood was my visits to an aunt Charlotte in her lovely country house. She (be) <u>was</u> a remarkable woman by any standards. She (be) \_\_\_\_\_ really skilled at water-diving and she (find) \_\_\_\_\_ water on the most unpromising bits of land. The farmers (love) \_\_\_\_\_ her, especially as she (never accept) \_\_\_\_\_ money for water-diving. 'Water (always find) \_\_\_\_\_\_ its own level,' she (say) \_\_\_\_\_ 'and I know exactly where the level is. Water-diving is a gift from God and you don't accept payment for that.' She had a gift for noticing changes in the weather, too. 'It's going to rain soon,' she (say) \_\_\_\_\_, 'I can feel it in my bones,' and she (always be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ right! In her later years, she developed a bad back and (often visit) \_\_\_\_\_\_ her osteopath. She (never tire) \_\_\_\_\_\_ of telling us that her osteopath (say) \_\_\_\_\_, as he massaged her painful back, 'It's going to rain, Charlotte. I can feel it in my bones!'

#### 1.12 'Need' and 'dare' as modals and as full verbs

#### 1.12 A 'Need' as a modal and as a full verb.

- 1 We use need as a modal (without to after it) mainly in the negative to mean 'it isn't necessary': I needn't go to the meeting today. I needn't have gone to the meeting yesterday.
- 2 In the affirmative, we use need as a modal:
- *in questions: Need you go* **so soon?** *Need you have told* **him the truth?**
- with 'negative adverbs' (e.g. hardly): I need hardly tell you how important this is.
- *3* Otherwise, we generally use the full verb **need to** (used like any regular verb):
  - I need to/I don't need to/I needed to/I didn't need to go to the dentist this morning.

#### 54. Replace the phrases in italics with modal need or the full verb need to.

	modal	rull verb
1. Is it necessary for you to go so soon?	<u>Need you do?</u>	Do you need to go?
2. Is it necessary for me to wait till you return?		
3. It's not necessary for them to wait.		
4. It wasn't necessary for you to have said that.		
5. It's hardly necessary for me to explain it.		
6. <i>There is no need for him</i> to learn about this.		
7. All that is necessary for you to do is to agree.		
8. I don't think there is any need for you to		
explain.		

#### **1.12 B** The form of 'dare' as a modal and as a full verb

- 1 We use dare as a modal (that is, without to after it) mainly in the negative to express lack of courage: I daren't tell him the truth. I daren't ask for more money.
- 2 In the affirmative, we use dare as a modal:- in questions: Dare you do it?
  - with 'negative adverbs' (e.g. hardly): I hardly dare tell him what happened.
- 3 We also form questions with do/does/did: Do you dare tell him? I don't dare tell him.
- 4 We can use dare to as a full verb: Do you dare to tell him? I don't dare to tell him.
- 5 And note: / didn't like the meal
- but I daren't say so/I daren't have said so/I didn't dare (to) say so/I dared not say so.

## 55. Supply dare, daren't, dare not have (done), didn't dare (do), etc.

- 1. I <u>daren't</u> tell them I've just broken their favourite vase.
- 2. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ tell them I had broken their favourite vase.
- 3. I hardly \_\_\_\_\_\_ mention this, but you still haven't paid for those tickets.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_\_ we ask for more money after what he has just said?
- 5. I knew I was right, but I \_\_\_\_\_\_ say so at the time.
- 6. I'm going to tell your mother what you've just said! Just you \_\_\_\_\_!
- 7. She'd like to wear more unconventional clothes, but she \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. We didn't like the meal they gave us, but we \_\_\_\_\_\_ said so. It would have been rude.

9. They offered me something strange to eat which I \_\_\_\_\_\_ refuse.

## 1.12 C Uses of 'dare'

We use **dare** in four ways to express:

*1 courage:* Very few climbers have *dared* (*to*) attempt Mount Everest without oxygen. Dare (to) is in the affirmative here, and this use is relatively rare.

2 lack of courage: I don't dare (to) tell the children that our holiday has been cancelled. This use of dare (to), in the negative, is the most common.

3 challenge: I dare you to jump off that wall. (Not I dare you jump'')

We use **dare** only as a full verb with **to** for challenging. We use it in the affirmative and negative like any other verb. 'Challenging' is common in the language of children.

4 *outrage:* How *dare you read* my private diary! (*Not* 'How dare you to read\*) We use dare only as a modal without to when expressing outrage.

## 56. What do the sentences below express? Choose a, b, c, or d:

**a** courage **b** lack of courage **c** challenge **d** outrage

- 1. You dare raise your voice! d
- 2. I dare you to put a spider in her desk.
- 3. How dare you speak to me like that?
- 4. He's the only person who'll dare (to) stand up to her!
- 5. I wanted to ask for some time off, but I didn't dare.

6. Jill's friends dared her to bring her pet snake to class.

- 7. I daren't ask for any more money.
- 8. He lost his job because he dared (to) speak out. \_
- 9. Don't you dare do anything like that in public again!
- 10. I daren't have said so at the time, but I was very bored.
- 11. John never dares to stand up in public and say what he thinks.
- 12. I'm going to break the door down! Just you dare!

## 1.12 D Context

## **57.** *Combine the correct forms of dare and need with the verbs in brackets.* UNWELCOME FRESH AIR!

It was a routine flight from Hilo on Hawaii to Kahului 110 miles away. Suddenly, there was a tremendous noise and the top of the plane was torn away! Ninety-four passengers (not move) <u>daren't not move</u>, wondering what would happen next. They (not worry) \_\_\_\_\_\_ because Robert Schornsteimer, the pilot, was firmly in control. For 25 minutes they hardly (breathe) \_\_\_\_\_\_, though there was plenty of unwelcome fresh air! 'I (not open) \_\_\_\_\_\_ my mouth,' one of the passengers said later. 'I hardly (tell) \_\_\_\_\_\_ you how terrified I was.' The passengers embraced the pilot who had brought the plane down safely. 'I've heard of a plane flying off a roof,' joked one of them later, 'but never of a roof flying off the plane!'

## 1.13 "Would / wouldn't"; "that ... should"; "there" + modal

## 1.13 A 'Would' and 'wouldn't' in place of the simple present tense or 'will' future

We often use would and wouldn't in place of the simple present (and sometimes in place of

will/won't) when we want to sound less definite, or when we want to be very polite: That seems to be a good idea. - That would seem to be a good idea.

I *think* Friday will be OK. - I *would think* that Friday will be OK.

Thursday *isn't/won't* be convenient. - Thursday *wouldn't* be convenient.

#### 58. Replace the verbs in italics with would and wouldn't.

1. \$ 100 is rather expensive for a pair of gloves. would be

2. I'm sure your proposal *isn't* acceptable to the committee.

3. Does my idea seem reasonable to you? -I *think* so.

4. This new law *doesn't seem* to be fair to pensioners.

5. I'm not free on Thursday, but I am free on Friday.

6. She's offered to help, but I *don't imagine* she's serious.

7. Does that seem a reasonable price to offered for a used car?

## 1.13 B 'That ... should' after verbs like 'suggest'

If we put that after verbs like ask, propose, recommend, suggest, we continue like this:

- with should: I suggest that he should apply/shouldn't apply for the job.

- with the simple present: I suggest that he applies/he doesn't apply for the job.

- with the 'subjunctive': I suggest that he apply/not apply for the job.

Note on the 'subjunctive': In the 'subjunctive', the base form of the verb (be, go, run, etc.)

remains the same in all persons. The present form is rare in British English: I suggest you go/he go/they (etc.) go to the meeting tomorrow. The subjunctive form were is used in all persons in the past.

#### 59. a) Supply suitable verb forms in these sentences.

b) Then mark your answers a (= should), b (= simple present), or c (= 'subjunctive').

1. Marion proposed that <u>we should buy</u> a gift for Jim who would soon be leaving the firm. (we / buy) <u>a</u>.

2. The travel agent recommended that \_\_\_\_\_\_ driving abroad during the holidays. (we / avoid) \_\_\_\_

3. I suggest that \_\_\_\_\_\_ this matter during the meeting. (he / not raise) \_\_\_\_\_

4. All I ask is that \_\_\_\_\_\_ the rules. (they / not break) \_\_\_\_

5. What does he advise \_\_\_\_\_? (she / do) \_\_\_\_

6. It's no good demanding that \_\_\_\_\_\_ our performance. We're doing our best. (we / improve)

7. I would only request that \_\_\_\_\_\_ good care of this flat while you're living in it. (you / take) \_\_\_\_

8. Her solicitor insisted that she \_\_\_\_\_\_ is signing the contract. (not / delay) \_\_\_\_

9. I suggest \_\_\_\_\_\_ a taxi if we what to get to the meeting on time. (we / take) \_\_\_\_\_

10. He asks that \_\_\_\_\_\_ to visit her children once a week. (he / be allowed) \_\_\_\_

## 1.13 C 'That ... should' after adjectives like 'essential'

If we put that after adjectives like essential, urgent, vital, we continue like this:

- with should: It's urgent that he should send the information at once.

- with the simple present: It's urgent that he sends the information at once.

- with the 'subjunctive': It's urgent that he send the information at once.

## 60. a) Supply suitable verb forms in these sentences.

b) Then mark your answers a (= should), b (= simple present), or c (= 'subjunctive').

- 1. It's urgent that <u>we should send</u> the information now. (we / send) <u>a</u>
- 2. It's essential that \_\_\_\_\_\_ home now. (she / return) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. It's vital that \_\_\_\_\_\_. (he / be inform)
- 4. I'm eager that \_\_\_\_\_\_ present at the meeting. (she / be) \_\_\_\_

#### **1.13 D 'There' + modal auxiliaries**

Just as there will combine with be (there is, there was, there has been, etc., it will combine with modals:

There could be no doubt about it. There must be a mistake.

There can't have been any doubt about it. There might have been a mistake.

There never used to be anyone living next door. There might have been someone outside.

61. Supply appropriate modal combinations. More than one answer is possible in each case.

- 1. There (be) a problem about this. <u>There could be a problem about this.</u>
- 2. There (be) a witness present.
- 3. There (never be) a better opportunity.

4. (there be) a reason for this delay?

5. (there be) another election soon?

6. Why (there be) so much red tape?

7. Why (not there be) more university places?

## 1.13 E Context

62. Supply suitable forms of the verbs and insert could be, may be, will be, would seem.

MEDICAL DETECTIVE?

'For the time being,' Dr Grey said, 'it's important that (you take) <u>you (should) take</u> it easy. Immediately after a heart attack, I suggest (you get) \_\_\_\_\_\_ plenty of rest. After a month, I recommend (you begin) \_\_\_\_\_\_ taking a little exercise.' Mr Fry blinked through his glasses. 'I \_\_\_\_\_\_ dead!' he protested. 'If you don't do as I tell you, you will be,' Dr Grey said. 'It's vital that (you follow) \_\_\_\_\_\_ my advice.' 'But I've always been so active, Doctor.' 'And you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ active again, but not yet. Come and see me in a fortnight.' Of course, Mr Fry didn't follow his doctor's advice. 'There \_\_\_\_\_\_ people who can sit around,' he said to his wife, 'but I can't!' He spent the morning before his next appointment painting the kitchen ceiling. In the afternoon, he visited Dr Grey. 'It \_\_\_\_\_ you have been painting the ceiling!' Dr Grey said sternly. 'How can you possibly know, Doctor?' 'You've got paint on your glasses!' the doctor said.

## 2. PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERB PARTICLES

## 2.1 Prepositions, adverb particles and conjunctions

## 2.1 A Words we can use either as prepositions or as adverbs

1 There are many 'small words' in English such as up, down, and by which we call prepositions. In fact, we use these as prepositions or adverb particles. Understanding the difference between the two will help us to understand 'phrasal verbs'.

- 2A preposition must have an object (a noun or a pronoun), so it is always related to a noun: across the road, over the wall, up the hill, down the mountain.
- 3 An adverb particle does not need an object, so it is more closely related to a verb: walk across, drive over, come up, climb down.

4 We can use the following words either as prepositions or adverb particles:

about, above, across, after, along, before, behind, below, beneath, between, beyond, by, down, in, inside, near, off, on, opposite, outside, over, past, round, through, under, underneath, up, without. This means we can say:

We drove round the city, (round has a noun object, so it's a preposition) We drove *round*, (round *has no object*, *so it's an* adverb particle).

## 1. You are giving instructions to a young child. Give each instruction twice.

- 1. (run across the road) Run across the road. Run across now.
- 2. (climb over the wall)

3. (come inside the house)

- 4. (go down the hill)
- 5. (go up the ladder)
- 6. (run past the window)

## 2.1 B Words we can use only as prepositions or only as adverbs

1 We use some 'small words' only as prepositions, so they always have a noun or pronoun object: against, among, at, beside, during, except, for, from, into, of, onto, on top of, out of, since, till/until, to, toward(s), upon, with. This means we have to say: e.g.

Sit beside me. We can't say \*Sit beside. \*

2 We use other 'small words' only as adverb particles, so they do not have an object: away, back, backward(s), downward(s), forward(s), on top, out, upward(s). This means we have to say: e.g. Don't go near the fire. Stay away! (Not 'Stay away the fire!\*)

2. You are answering the question What did you do? Supply suitable noun objects where possible.

3. We jumped back \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Waited at *the station*. 2. We went to \_\_\_\_\_

4. We climbed out

5. We drove away \_\_\_\_\_

6. We ran into

7. We ran out of

8. We went upwards

## 2.1 C Words we can use either as prepositions or conjunctions

*I* There are a few words we can use either as prepositions or conjunctions: after, as, before, since and till/until.

2 When we use them as prepositions, we have a noun or pronoun object after them: Let's have our meeting *after lunch*.

**3** When we use them as conjunctions, we have a clause after them: Let's have our meeting *after we have had lunch*.

#### 3. Complete these sentences with a) a noun object b) a clause

- 1. I can't work before *breakfast / before I have had breakfast*
- 2. I'll meet you after
- 3. I'll wait here till
- 4. I've been staying at this hotel since

## 2.1 D Object pronouns after prepositions: 'between you and me'

We use the object form of a pronoun, not the subject form, after a preposition: Between you and me, I think he's a fool. (Not 'Between you and I\*)

#### 4. Circle the right forms in these sentences.

- 1. The invitation is for my husband and me / I.
- 2. She gave these presents to us / we.
- 3. Share this between yourself and they / them.
- 4. For us / we, the older generation, there have been many changes in society.
- 5. Employers are keen on people like us / we who work hard.
- 6. The news came as quite a surprise to a person like me / I.

## 2.1 E Context

## 5. Circle 17 items (including in the title) and say whether they are prepositions or particles.

#### TWO LEGS IN ONE BOOT

It was late in the afternoon. Inspector May had an hour to go before he finished work for the day. He sat in his police car watching the traffic go by. Suddenly, he sat up! A woman in a blue car drove slowly past and the inspector clearly saw a pair of man's legs sticking out of the boot! Inspector Mayhew immediately gave chase. The woman drove round the town. The blue lamp on top of the police car flashing, but the woman paid no attention to it. The inspector finally got in front of her and made her stop. 'What's the matter?' the woman asked. 'You've got a body in the boot!' the inspector said. There was a loud laugh from the boot. 'But I'm alive,' the voice said. 'I'm a car mechanic and I'm trying to find the cause of a strange noise in the back of this car.'

## 2.2 Prepositions of movement and position. Prepositions of time

## 2.2 A At a point', 'in an area' and 'on a surface'

*1* We use to/from and into/out of to show direction with movement:

- to/from: She has gone to Paris. She has just come home from Paris.

- into/out of. I went into the shop. I came out of the shop.

2 We use at, in, on to show position after movement: at a point, in an area, on a surface. We can use at with some nouns to mean 'a (meeting) point' or into mean 'inside':

I'll meet you at the airport. (= that's the meeting point) I'll meet you in the airport. (= inside the building)

*Typical nouns like this are:* the cinema, the office, the bank, the library, (the) school. *3 We use* at *mainly with:* 

- public places/buildings: at the airport, the bus stop, the Grand Hotel, the butcher's.

- addresses: at his sister's, 24 Cedar Avenue.

- nouns with zero article: at home, church, college, school, university

- *events:* at a concert, a dance, a dinner, a funeral, a meeting, a party, a wedding. He's gone *to a party*. He is *at a party*.

He's been to a party. He was at a party.

4. We use in mainly with:

- large areas: in Europe, Asia, the Antarctic, the Andes, the Sahara, Texas, the Pacific.

- towns/parts of towns: in Canterbury, Chelsea, Dallas, Manhattan, New York, Paris.

- outside areas: in the garden, the park, Hyde Park, the street, the old town, the desert.

- rooms: in the bathroom, his bedroom, the garage, the kitchen, the waiting room.

- nouns with zero article: in bed, chapel, church, hospital, prison.

He's gone to Texas. He is in Texas.

He's been to Texas. He was in Texas.

## 6. Supply at or in

- 1. He's gone to the station. He's probably <u>at the station now.</u>
- 2. She's gone to school. She's probably \_\_\_\_\_ school now.
- 3. He flew from London. He's probably \_\_\_\_\_ Paris now.
- 4. He's gone into the garden. He's \_\_\_\_\_ the garden now.
- 5. She's gone to bed. She's \_\_\_\_\_ bed now.
- 6. He's gone to a dinner party. He's probably \_\_\_\_\_ the dinner now.

7. She's gone to a wedding. She's probably \_\_\_\_\_ the wedding now.

- 8. He's gone to the kitchen. He's probably \_\_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen now.
- 9. They've come out of the desert. They're probably \_\_\_\_\_ the jungle now.

10. They've gone to New York. They're probably \_\_\_\_\_ New York now.

11. She's gone to the waiting room. She's probably \_\_\_\_\_ the waiting room now.

- 12. He's been sent to prison. He's probably \_\_\_\_\_ prison now.
- 13. She's gone to the doctor's. She's probably \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor's now.
- 14. He's gone home. He's probably \_\_\_\_\_ home now.

- 15. She's gone to the old town. She's probably \_\_\_\_\_ the old town now.
- 16. They've sailed to the Pacific. They're probably \_\_\_\_\_ the Pacific now.

17. We live \_\_\_\_\_ 14 Woodland Avenue.

18. She was taken to hospital. She's \_\_\_\_\_ hospital now.

## 2.2 B Prepositions of time: 'at', 'on' and 'in'

1 We use at for: exact time: at 10 o'clock; meal times: at lunch time; points of time: at night; festivals: at Christmas; age: at the age of 14; + 'time': at this/that time.

2 We use on for: days of the week: on Monday, on Mondays; parts of the day:

on Monday morning; *dates:* on June 1st, *particular occasions:* on that day, *anniversaries:* on your birthday, *festivals:* on New Year's Day.

3. We use in for: parts of the day: in the evening; months: in May, years: in 2050; seasons: in (the) spring; centuries: in the 20th century; periods: in Ramadan, in two years' time.

## 7. Supply *at*, *on* or *in*

- 1. I'll meet you \_\_\_\_\_ 10.30 \_\_\_\_ Monday, June 14.
- 2. We're taking our holiday \_\_\_\_\_ July.
- 3. I always finish work early \_\_\_\_\_ Fridays.
- 4. Who knows what the world will be like \_\_\_\_\_ the year 2030?
- 5. You don't want anything to go wrong \_\_\_\_\_ your wedding day.
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ the  $19^{\text{th}}$  century many children died before they were a year old.
- 7. We got up \_\_\_\_\_ dawn and reached the summit \_\_\_\_\_ noon.
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_ the age of 14 I realized I would never become a brain surgeon.
- 9. The birds don't find much to eat in our garden \_\_\_\_\_ winter.
- 10. What will you be doing \_\_\_\_\_ the holidays?
- 11. What will you be doing \_\_\_\_\_ New Year's day?
- 12. The year was 1986. \_\_\_\_\_ that time I was working as a waiter.
- 13. We try to get away \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas time.
- 14. I'll see you \_\_\_\_\_ ten days' time.
- 15. They prepared a surprise for me at the office \_\_\_\_\_ My birthday.

## 2.2 C Context

## 8. Supply the missing prepositions.

## 'THE PROPHECY'

People who live \_\_\_\_\_ California have e reason to be afraid of earthquakes. No one has ever forgotten the great quake that destroyed San Francisco \_\_\_\_\_ 1906. \_\_\_\_ May, 1988, the people of Los Angeles panicked. According to a prophecy made \_\_\_\_\_ the 16<sup>th</sup> century by a prophet called Nostradamus, the city would be destroyed early \_\_\_\_\_ 1988. During the panic, parents didn't send their children \_\_\_\_\_ school and people didn't go \_\_\_\_\_ work. No one stayed \_\_\_\_\_ home, either. The airlines did great business carrying people who fled \_\_\_\_\_ their 'doomed city'. Which is more puzzling:

how Nostradamus knew that a city which didn't even exist \_\_\_\_\_ his time would be destroyed \_\_\_\_\_ the 20<sup>th</sup> century, or the behaviour of the people who believed 'the prophecy'?

## 2.3 Adverbial phrases of duration

## 2.3 A 'Since', 'for' and 'ago'

*I* 'Since' + a point of time *answers* Since when?\Ne *use* since *with the present perfect to mark a period lasting till now:* I haven't seen him *since January.* 

2 'For' + period of time answers How long?We use for to refer to periods of time:

- *in the past:* My wife and I worked in America *for five months*.
- *in the future:* John will be staying in New York *for two weeks*.
- *in the present perfect:* I've known Susan *for five years*.

```
3 Period of time + 'ago' answers How long ago? and marks the start of a period going back from now. We use ago with the simple past: I arrived here two months ago.
```

## 9. Show where since or ago will fit into these sentences.

Since when have ....

- 1. When have you been interested in Jazz?
- 2. I saw you mother a week.
- 3. I started work here seven months.
- 4. I saw her last week and haven't seen her.
- 5. I haven't been home 1987.
- 6. How long did you become a doctor?

## 10. Show where since or ago will fit into these sentences.

- ... for five years ...
- 1. They lived here five years before moving.
- 2. They have lived here 1984.
- 3. I've known him six years.
- 4. I've been expecting a letter weeks.
- 5. I've been expecting a letter last week.
- 6. I've enjoyed jazz I was a boy.

## 2.3 B 'Till' (or 'until') and 'by'

*1 Some verbs naturally refer to 'periods of time' or 'continuity': e.g.* learn, lie, live, rain, sit, sleep, stand, stay, wait *and* work.

2 Till (or until) and by mean 'any time before and not later than'.

We cannot use by at all with these 'continuity' verbs. (Not I'll wait here by 5 o'clock.)

We can only use till (or until) with these verbs:

I'll wait here till (or until) 5 o'clock. I won't wait here till (or until) 5 o'clock.

*3* We use by with verbs which do not refer to periods of time.

- *We can think of these as 'point of time verbs': e.g.* arrive, come, finish, go, leave: She *will arrive by* 5. (= *any time before and not later than* 5.) She *won't arrive by* 5. She'll arrive at 6.
- **4** We use till or until with 'point of time verbs' only in the negative. She won't arrive till (or until) 5. (But not \*She will arrive till 5. \*)

#### **11.** Supply *by* or *till*.

- 1. I'll wait *till* Monday before answering this letter.
- 2. I intend to stay in bed \_\_\_\_\_ 10 o'clock tomorrow morning.
- 3. Your suit will be ready \_\_\_\_\_ Friday.
- 4. Your suit won't be ready \_\_\_\_\_ Friday. You can collect it then.
- 5. Your suit won't be ready Friday. You can collect it next Monday.
- 6. I'm sure I will have left \_\_\_\_\_ Monday.
- 7. Your aunt says she won't leave \_\_\_\_\_ Monday. Monday's the day she's going to leave.

## 2.3 C 'During', 'in' and 'for'

*1* During *means*:

- either: 'from the beginning to the end': We had a lot of fun during the holidays.

- or: 'at some point during a period of time': I'll mend the gate during the weekend. We watched a very nice film during the flight to New York.

2 We use in like during to refer to time:

We had a lot of fun *in the holidays*. (Or: ... during the holidays) But we cannot use in to refer to an activity or event: We watched a

film *during the flight*. (Not 'in the flight\*)

3 For tells us 'how long':

We stayed in Recife for a week/for three weeks. (Not 'during three weeks')

## 12. Supply in, during and for. Show which sentences take both in and during.

1. It was very hot <u>during</u> August.	7. Many people gave up the
2. I was sent abroad my military	course.
service.	8. I suddenly felt ill my speech.
3. It rained the night.	9. There was an accident the race.
4. I'll see you the lunch hour.	10. I sleep the daytime.
5. I woke up twice the night.	11. I'm going abroad June.
6. I tried to get a taxi a whole	12. Can you hold your breath two
hour.	minutes?

## 2.3 D Context

13. Put in during, in, by, till, since, for or ago.

#### PEACE AND QUIET

I moved to this area seven years <u>ago</u>. \_\_\_\_\_ years I have had noisy neighbours. Ever \_\_\_\_\_ I moved into this flat, I've had to put up with noise \_\_\_\_\_ the night. I decided I'd had enough and I've been looking for a new flat \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning of the year. I haven't found anything \_\_\_\_\_ now. Every week I go to the local estate agent's office, but it's the same story. 'I might have something \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the week,' he says, or, 'Wait \_\_\_\_\_ next week. I think I might have a few flats \_\_\_\_\_\_ then.' I've seen a few flats \_\_\_\_\_ my search, but I don't like any of them. One flat I saw has been empty \_\_\_\_\_\_ two years. 'It's got a busy road on one side and a railway on the other!' I exclaimed. 'I want peace and quiet.' Last week I visited the agent again. 'I won't leave \_\_\_\_\_\_ you show me something,' I said. He smiled and said, ' I've got just the flat for you.' I went to see it and I was horrified. 'But it's next to the cemetery!' I cried. 'But you won't have noisy neighbours,' my agent said. ''It's ideal for peace and quiet!'

#### **2.4 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (1)**

#### 2.4 A Prepositions, particles, etc. often confused and misused

#### 1 about and on

We can use **about** and **on** to mean 'concerning'. We use **on** in a formal way, e.g. to describe a textbook: **a textbook on physics; about** is informal: **a book about animals.** 

#### 2 according to and by

We use according to to refer to information coming from other people or sources: according to him, according to this guide book. When we refer to ourselves, we say in my opinion (Not 'according to me\*). We can use by or according to when we refer to a clock or a timetable: By or According to my watch, it's 3.15.

#### 3 across and over

We can use both these prepositions to mean 'from one side to the other': My house is across/ over the road/the river. We cannot use over for large areas: They're laying a pipeline across Siberia. (Not 'over\*) We use over after verbs like wander to mean 'here and there'. We use across to describe movement through water: She swam across the Channel. (Not 'over the Channel\*) But we say over a wall/a fence. (Not 'across\*)

#### 4 across and through

**Through,** meaning 'from one side to the other', refers to something like a tunnel **{through a pipe)** or something dense **(through the forest); across** refers to a large area **(across the desert).** With some nouns, like **park**, we can use either **across** or **through.** 

#### 5 after and afterwards

We generally use a noun or pronoun with after, after lunch. We use afterwards on its own: We had a swim in the sea. Afterwards we lay on the beach. (Not 'After\*) 6 around and about

We use both words to refer to 'lack of purpose': We didn't have anything to do, so

we started fooling around/about. But we say He lives (a)round here. (= near)(Not \*about\*)

#### 7 at, to and against

We use at after adjectives like good, clever. After verbs like throw, at often means 'taking aim'. Compare: throw at (to hit) and throw to (for someone to catch). When there is no idea of 'taking aim', we use against: throw the ball against the wall. And note: fight against. We use at for speed or price: at 100 miles an hour, at \$2 each.

#### 8 away

Away combines with far (far away) and from (away from) and with verbs which give the idea of 'distance': e.g. live, work: I live 5 miles away. (Not I live 5 miles far away)

#### 9 because and because of

We use because to give a reason: We left the party because it was noisy. We use a noun or pronoun after because of. We left the party because of the noise.

#### 10 before or in front of

We often use **before** to refer to time (**before 7**); in front of (and its opposite, **behind**) refers to position. We can use either **before** or **in front of** after the verbs **come** and *g0*.

## 11 behind, at the back (of) and back

We can put a noun or pronoun after behind (behind this house) or we can use it on its own (there's a garden behind). Or we can say: at the back of this house, it's at the back.

Do not confuse back with again: invite them back means 'return their hospitality'. Don't use back after return: We returned early. (Not 'returned back\*) Note: 3 years back (= ago).

## 14. Supply suitable words. Refer to the notes only when you have to.

about or on?	11. We managed to get the		
1. Read this article the Antarctic.	jungle.		
2. I've read a lot of books	12. I've never walked the park.		
animals.	away (add far where possible)		
according to or by?	13. I see storm clouds in the		
3 Dr Pim, the sea is rising.	distance.		
4 the timetable, the train leaves	14. London is 15 miles from here.		
at 8.27.	<i>because</i> or <i>because of</i> ?		
5. It's 10.15 my watch.	15. I couldn't get to work I was		
across or over?	ill.		
6. There's a newsagent's the road.	16. I couldn't get to work my		
7. No one wants a pipeline	illness.		
Alaska.	<i>before</i> or <i>in front of</i> ?		
8. We skated the frozen lake.	17. Make sure you're there 7.		
9. I'm going to swim the river.	18. I'll wait for you the shop.		
across or through?	19. You come me in the queue.		
10. Nothing can flow this pipe.	after or afterwards?		

20. Come and see me \_\_\_\_\_ work. 31. Ron is driving \_\_\_\_\_ 100 miles an 21. We tidied up. Our guests arrived hour. 32. We have combs \_\_\_\_\_ \$2 each. soon \_\_\_\_\_. 22. We had a swim and \_\_\_\_\_ we behind, at the back (of) or back? 33. There's a garden in front and one sunbathed. *around* or *about*? 23. We stood \_\_\_\_\_ waiting. 34. Keep this book. I don't want it 24. I wish you'd stop fooling 25. Let me show you \_\_\_\_\_ the house. 35. There's a garden \_\_\_\_\_ the house. 36. I saw him four years \_\_\_\_\_. 26. He lives somewhere 37. They invited us. We must invite Manchester. at, to or against? them \_\_\_\_ 38. We had to go \_\_\_\_\_ early after the 27. I'm not very good figures. 28. Throw it \_\_\_\_\_ me so that I can party. 39. Put it \_\_\_\_\_ in its place. catch it. 40. I've fallen \_\_\_\_\_ in my work. 29. Jim is always throwing stones \_\_\_\_\_ 41. I tried to lift it out of the hole but it birds. 30. We fought \_\_\_\_\_ the enemy. fell \_\_\_\_\_.

## 2.4 B Context

15. Put in about, according to, across, after, at, away, because, before, behind, in front of, on.

#### A GOOD EYE FOR A LEFT EAR

O My friend Jonathan, who lives \_\_\_\_\_\_ the road, develops and prints films. \_\_\_\_\_\_ Jonathan most of us take awful pictures. Usually, we fail to aim \_\_\_\_\_\_ the subject so that the subject is not even in the picture. Sometimes the subject is too far \_\_\_\_\_; sometimes is too near. Some photos are spoilt because the sun is \_\_\_\_\_\_ us, when of course, it should always be \_\_\_\_\_\_ us. Some of us take blank pictures \_\_\_\_\_\_ we take the lens cover off \_\_\_\_\_\_ we have taken our shots. We take most of our pictures when we are on holiday and like to catch our friends when they are fooling \_\_\_\_\_\_. It's a pity we don't practise using our cameras \_\_\_\_\_\_ we go on holiday. A good book \_\_\_\_\_\_ bottom they are laxed Jonathan what was the worst film he had ever seen. He didn't have to think very hard \_\_\_\_\_\_ the question. At once he answered, 'Twenty-four shots of the photographer's left ear!'

## 2.5 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (2)

#### 2.5 A Prepositions, particles, etc. often confused and misused

#### 1 beside and besides

**Beside** + noun/pronoun means 'next to': **Sit** beside me. **Besides** with or without an object means 'in addition to' or 'as well as': **There were many people there** 

#### besides (us).

## 2 between and among

We commonly use **between** to show a division between two people, things, or times: **Divide this** between you both. We use **among** + plural noun to refer to a mass of people, etc.: **Were you** among the people **present?** We sometimes use **between** to refer to more than two, if these can be viewed separately: **Don't smoke** between courses.

## 3 but (for) and except (for)

**But** (for)Zexcept (for) mean 'with the exception of: Everyone has helped but (for)fexcept (for) you. We can use except and our without for, but not to begin a sentence: Except for/But for you, everyone has helped. (Not 'Except you/But you everyone ... .\*) Except for/but for can mean 'if not': We'd've been on time except for/but for the snow.

## 4 by, near and on

By can mean 'right next to': Sit by me. We often use the words right or close in front of by: The hotel is right by/close by the station. Near (or not far from) usually suggests 'a short way from': We live near/not far from London. On means 'right next to' or 'beside' when we refer to 'a line': Our house is right on the road. I can't see what is on my left.

## 5 by and past

We use either word after verbs of motion (go, run, walk, etc.) to mean 'beyond in space or time': He went right by/past me without speaking. A few days went by/past.

## 6 by, with and without

We often use by in fixed phrases: by **bus**, by car, by post. We also use it to refer to 'method': You can open it by moving the catch. By can refer to time and rate: I'm paid by the hour. With/ without refer to things (especially tools or instruments) which we need to use: You can't open it with/without a bottle-opener.

## 7 down, up, under and over

**Down** is the opposite of up and shows direction towards a lower level, especially with 'movement verbs': Let's climb up/down. We can also use up and down to show position: He lives up/down the street. Under suggests 'being covered': Let's sit under a tree. Over can have the meaning 'covering': Keep this blanket over you. 8 due to and owing to

We often use either one or the other. However, due to is related to a noun + be: Our delay (noun) was (+ be) due to/caused by the heavy traffic. Owing to (= because of) is related to the verb: The broadcast was cancelled (verb) owing to/because of the strike.

## 9 like and as

Like (= to compare with) is followed by a noun or pronoun: There's no one like John/you. We can also use it to mean 'such as': Invite people like the Frys. Like can also mean 'similar to/ in the same way as': It was like a dream. He acts like a king. We use as (Not "like") + object to mean 'in the capacity of: / work as a receptionist. We also use as to give a reason: As the last bus had left, we walked home.

We use like informally to introduce a clause, especially in American English: Like I told you, it's an offer I can't refuse. A lot of native speakers of English think this is wrong.

22. You can open it \_\_\_\_\_ pulling this beside or besides? 1. Who was sitting \_\_\_\_\_ you? lever. 23. Dentists are paid \_\_\_\_\_ the hour. 2. Who's invited \_\_\_\_\_ us? 3. It's a fast car. \_\_\_\_\_ it's got a four-24. It won't open \_\_\_\_\_ a bottle-opener. wheel drive. down, up, under or over? between or among? 25. My mother lives \_\_\_\_\_ the street. 4. Divide it equally \_\_\_\_\_ the two of 26. The bus got stuck \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge. 27. Put this blanket \_\_\_\_\_ your knees. you. 5. Switzerland lies \_\_\_\_\_ four other *due to* or *owning to*? 28. Our success was \_\_\_\_\_ luck. countries. 29. Flights were delayed \_\_\_\_\_ the 6. I saw you \_\_\_\_\_ the crowd. but (for) or except (for)? strike. 7. The plane would've landed the 30. He lost his job \_\_\_\_\_ bad health. *like* or *as*? fog. 31. There's no business \_\_\_\_\_ show 8. Everyone sent flowers \_\_\_\_\_ you. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ you, everyone sent flowers. business. 10. Everyone's here \_\_\_\_\_ John. 32. \_\_\_\_\_ a lawyer, I would advise 11. Who \_\_\_\_\_ John would do a thing caution. like that? 33. I once worked a bus by, near or on? conductor. 12. I sat \_\_\_\_\_ the phone all morning. 34. This motorway is \_\_\_\_\_ a car park! 35. People \_\_\_\_\_ the Joneses always 13. We live <u>Manchester</u>. 14. Our house is right \_\_\_\_\_ the river. copy us. 15. \_\_\_\_ my right I have Frank 36. \_\_\_\_\_ it was raining, I took a taxi. 37. \_\_\_\_ I explained, it's a public Milligan. by or past? holiday today. 16. The ball went right \_\_\_\_\_ my head! 38. He's more his mother than his 17. Several days went \_\_\_\_\_ before I father. 39. Who's used this knife \_\_\_\_\_ a had news. 18. Stop \_\_\_\_\_ her on your next visit. screw-driver? 19. Something flew \_\_\_\_\_ my ear. 40. You're just \_\_\_\_\_ your brother. 41. He spends money \_\_\_\_\_ 20. It's \_\_\_\_\_ your bedtime. a by, with or without? millionaire. 21. Our dog was hit \_\_\_\_\_ a bus.

## 16. Supply suitable words. Refer to the notes only when you have to.

#### 2.5 B Context

17. Put in among, as, beside, between, by, down (or up), due, except, like, past, without.

#### DELIVERED AND SIGNED FOR!

\_\_\_\_\_ my grandmother used to say, 'Don't sign anything \_\_\_\_\_ checking first.' I forgot this good advice when two delivery-men brought my new sideboard yesterday. Delivery was very late \_\_\_\_\_ to the heavy traffic on the road. I saw the delivery-van go \_\_\_\_\_ the house and stop outside a neighbour's \_\_\_\_\_ the street. Then I watched it reverse until it stopped right \_\_\_\_\_ my house. I went outside to look into the back of the van: there was my lovely sideboard \_\_\_\_\_ several pieces of furniture! It was quite heavy, but the two men managed it \_\_\_\_\_ them. Soon, the beautiful sideboard was in place, \_\_\_\_\_ the dining-room wall. I had waited so long for it, it was \_\_\_\_\_ a dream! It was only when the men left that I realized I had checked everything \_\_\_\_\_ the keys. It had been delivered \_\_\_\_\_ keys! It was too late to phone the shop, but I needn't have worried because the next morning the keys arrived in the post. I unlocked the sideboard and found a note inside which said, 'Keys will follow \_\_\_\_\_ post!'

#### 2.6 Particular prepositions, particles: contrasts (3)

#### 2.6 A Prepositions, particles, etc. often confused and misused

#### 1 of, out of, from and with after made

We use made of and made out of when we can actually recognize the material(s): made of wood, iron, etc. We use made from when the ingredients are not immediately obvious: a cake made from eggs, milk and flour. We use made with (= contains) to identify one or more of the ingredients: These chocolates are made with fresh cream.

#### 2 of and off

We never use of and off in place of each other. We always use a noun or pronoun object after of: north of the river, a woman of 50. We can use an object after off, or we can use it on its own to suggest separation: just off the motorway, take the top off.

#### 3 on and in

We often use both of these to refer to the body. On refers to surface: on your nose. In suggests 'deep': a speck in my eye, or refers to pain: a pain in my stomach.

#### 4 out of and outside

**Out of** *is the opposite of* **into** *when we are describing movement:* **We ran** *out of the building. In this sense, we can't replace* **out of by outside.** *Compare uses without movement:* **He is** *out of his office.* (= *not here*) **He is** *outside the office.* (= *waiting*)

5 over, above and on top of

- Over(= covering, sometimes touching): Keep the blankets over you. Above (= at a higher
- *level and not touching):* a light above my head. On top *of* (*= touching*): on top of the TV.
- We can use over and above in place of each other to mean 'vertically at a higher level':
- a helicopter over/above a lifeboat. We cannot use over and above in place of each

other when all we are concerned with is 'a higher level' (not vertical). If, for example, we were referring to two cats on a tree we would say that A was above B, not over it.

We also use both words to refer to rank, etc.: over/above the rank of colonel. 6 under, underneath and below

**Under** (= covered by, sometimes touching); **underneath** (= completely covered by):

a mat under/underneath a hot dish. Below is the opposite of above and we can use it in place of under/underneath,. Below (Not \*under\*) refers to position (below the knee).

7 with and without

We use with and without Xo mean 'accompanied by' or 'not accompanied by': with/without my sister. With can suggest 'having': with your hands in your pockets, and 'taking into consideration': with the high cost of living. With follows common adjectives (e.g. angry) and we use it in expressions like blue with cold. Without + -ing can suggest 'and not do something': Go into the room without waking the children.

8 with, without, in and of

We can use with and without to mean 'carrying'/'not carrying': with a handbag, without any money. We can also refer to physical characteristics: with a big nose; and such things as hairstyles and make-up: with pink lipstick. We can use in to mean 'wearing': the man in the blue suit. We can also refer to voice quality: in a loud voice. Of can describe personal qualities: a man of courage; age: a man of 65; or wealth: a woman of substance.

## 18. Supply suitable words. Refer to the notes only when you have to.

of, out of, from or with after made?	out of or outside?
1. You rarely find toys made solid	11. We ran the house, into the
wood.	street.
2. Beer is made hops.	12. Mr Ray's not here. He's his
3. Bronze is made copper and tin.	office.
4. This sauce is made fresh ice-	13. Please wait the headmaster's
cream.	study.
<i>of</i> or <i>off</i> ?	14. There was a big crowd the
5. We live south the river.	building.
6. Our house is just the main	with or without?
road.	15. Enter the room making a
<i>on</i> or <i>in</i> ?	noise.
7. There's a black mark your	16 all our expenses, we can't
nose.	save.
8. I've got a speck of dust my	17. She was very angry me.
eye.	18. I turned blue cold.
9. I've got a deep cut my foot.	19. 'Life father' is a famous
10. I've got a light scratch my	book.
arm.	

20. As an orphan, I grew up \_\_\_\_\_ parents. 21. He stood \_\_\_\_\_ his hands in his pocket. 22. I was green \_\_\_\_\_ envy! over, above or on top of? 23. I can't sleep with a light \_\_\_\_\_ my head. 24. Don't put that cup \_\_\_\_\_ my papers, please. 25. The helicopter was \_\_\_\_\_ the lifeboat. 26. My bedroom is \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen. 27. We have the sky \_\_\_\_\_ us. 28. We don't want a boss like that us. 29. Major is \_\_\_\_\_ the rank of Captain. 30. His work is \_\_\_\_\_ average. 31. The answer is on the next page. See

under, underneath or below?

32. There's nothing new \_\_\_\_\_ the sun. 33. I think she is \_\_\_\_\_ 17. 34. Put a mat \_\_\_\_\_ that saucepan. 35. The stone hit me just \_\_\_\_\_ the knee. 36. What's \_\_\_\_\_ the rank of Captain? 37. She swam just \_\_\_\_\_ the surface. 38. I have two people \_\_\_\_\_ me at work. with, without, in or of? 39. Who's the woman the green umbrella? 40. I can't pay. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ any money. 41. The camera comes \_\_\_\_\_ a case included. 42. Who's the woman the green blouse? 43. He spoke \_\_\_\_\_ a quiet voice. 44. He's a man \_\_\_\_\_ a red moustache. 45. She's a woman \_\_\_\_\_ 38. 46. She's a woman \_\_\_\_\_ intelligence.

#### 2.6 B Context

## **19.** Put in *with, out of, over, off, of, in, above, below, on top of.* THE AMAZING FLYING HAT

She was a striking woman \_\_\_\_\_\_ about 25, dressed for the races. \_\_\_\_\_\_ her smart dress and fantastic hat made \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ feathers, she drew admiring glances as she walked down the street. Her hat attracted even more attention when a gust \_\_\_\_\_\_ wind lifted it \_\_\_\_\_\_ her head and carried it into the air. We all stopped to watch as this amazing hat flew \_\_\_\_\_\_ our heads. People came \_\_\_\_\_\_ buildings and into the street. The young woman \_\_\_\_\_\_ the smart dress was as entertained as the rest \_\_\_\_\_\_ us. Suddenly, the hat rested \_\_\_\_\_\_ a high building and we lost sight of it. Then the wind lifted it up again. 'There it is!' cried a man \_\_\_\_\_\_ an umbrella. He jabbed his umbrella at the sky \_\_\_\_\_. Then an amazing thing happened. The hat simply disappeared! The mystery was solved when someone shouted \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a loud voice. There was a tall yellow crane \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a high building and the crane driver looked down at the crowd \_\_\_\_\_\_. 'Lost your hat, miss?' the crane driver cried and we all gasped \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ surprise when we saw that the hat had been caught by his crane!

#### **3. PHRASAL VERBS**

#### **3.1** Phrasal verbs: Type 1, verb + preposition (transitive)

#### **3.1 A Introduction to phrasal verbs**

We often combine verbs with prepositions and adverb particles to form phrasal verbs. These verbs can have non-idiomatic or idiomatic meanings and we use them a lot. So, for example, if someone knocks at the door, we would probably say 'Come in!' rather than 'Enter'. We would say 'take off' your jacket, rather than 'remove' it, and so on. We can define four types of phrasal verbs according to form. As you learn new verbs, get used to recognizing them as one of these four types so that you learn how to use them.

*Note the terms:* transitive (= *followed by a noun or pronoun object*)

intransitive (= not followed by a noun or pronoun object)

*Type* 1: *verb* + *preposition* (*transitive*): *e.g.* Listen to **this record.** Listen to **it.** Listen! Type 2: *verb* + *particle* (*transitive*): *e.g.* Take off **your hat.** Take **your hat** off. Take **it** off.

*Type 3: verb + particle (intransitive): e.g. Hurry up! Sit down! Type 4: verb + particle + preposition (transitive): e.g.* **We've** *run out of* **matches.** 

#### 3.1 B Type 1: Verb + preposition + object, non-idiomatic: 'look at the camera'

These verbs are used in their normal sense.

#### 1. Supply the missing prepositions.

- I don't agree \_\_\_\_\_ your proposal.
   Mr Potter suffers \_\_\_\_\_ asthma.
   Please don't insist \_\_\_\_\_ paying the
- bill. 4. I wouldn't think \_\_\_\_\_ borrowing money.

5. These two pictures differ \_\_\_\_\_ each other.

- 6. Choose \_\_\_\_\_ the two.
- 7. Where did you read \_\_\_\_\_ it?
- 8. I'm depending \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- 9. We can only guess \_\_\_\_\_ the truth.
- 10. Please wait \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 11. Knock \_\_\_\_\_ the door.
- 12. Ask \_\_\_\_\_ the menu.

13. I don't agree \_\_\_\_ you.

14. How do you know \_\_\_\_\_ this?
15. Does this jacket belong \_\_\_\_\_ you?
16. Let's begin \_\_\_\_\_ tomato soup.
17. Can you look \_\_\_\_\_ the children for tonight?
18. I couldn't wish \_\_\_\_\_ a nicer office.
19. We failed \_\_\_\_\_ our attempt to win the race.
20. You can't reason \_\_\_\_\_ him.
21. This pie tastes \_\_\_\_\_ onion.
22. I don't believe \_\_\_\_\_ fairies.
23. I succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ starting the engine.
24. The police are looking \_\_\_\_\_ the robbers.

## **3.1** C Type 1: Verb + object + preposition + object, non-idiomatic: 'tell me about it'

These verbs are used in their normal sense.

2. Supply the missing prepositions.	
1. I've arranged an excursion you.	8. Translate this report Spanish
2. He accused me lying.	for me.
3. You can't hide the truth me.	9. I'll reserve a seat you.
4. Would you kindly explain this	10. You remind me my sister.
me?	11. Don't associate me them.
5. Invest some money this	12. Can you forgive me what I
company.	did?
6. I can't advise you your private	13. They robbed me my wallet.
life.	14. Don't repeat this anyone.
7. Insure your house storm	15. You can't blame me this.
damage.	16. He stole money the firm.

#### 3.1 D Type 1: Verb + preposition + object, idiomatic: 'get over an illness'

We cannot relate the parts of these verbs to their literal meanings: e.g. *I don't know what came over me*. (= affected)

## 3. Match these verbs (1 - 20) with the explanation on the right (a - f) after you have tried to explain them in your own way.

- 1 Eggs don't *agree with* me.  $\underline{\mathbf{f}}$
- 2 Please *call for* me at 6.
- 3 I *came across* this old book.
- 4 The dog *went for* the postman.
- 5 Let's go after him.
- 6 Can I count on you for help?
- 7 I haven't got over my cold yet.
- 8 This dress will *do for* Jane.
- 9 Where did you *come by* this information?
- 10 You can't dictate to me.
- 11 I'll sleep on your suggestion.
- 12 I can't make anything of this.
- 13 I won't stand for your rudeness.
- 14 Is there anyone here to wait on us?
- 15 The cost runs into millions.
- 16 She took to English quickly.
- 17 He's been *sitting on* my application.
- 18 You take after your father.
- 19 You can look over the house.

- a) decide later
- b) found (it) easy
- c) found
- d) reaches
- e) supervise
- f) have a bad effect on
- g) doing nothing with
- h) obtain
- i) come and collect
- j) resemble
- k) serve
- 1) attacked
- m) give orders to
- n) try and catch
- o) inspect
- p) rely on
- q) understand
- r) tolerate
- s) be all right for

t) recovered from

## 3.1 E Context

## **4.** Put in *at*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *of*, *on*, *out of* or *to*. Use each word at least once. IS THERE ANYBODY THERE?

A dentist in Bavaria has been haunted by a voice which swears \_\_\_\_\_ him all the time. The voice comes \_\_\_\_\_\_ light sockets, washbasins and the telephone. It is a sharp, deep voice which laughs \_\_\_\_\_\_ the dentist and mocks him. The poor dentist is suffering \_\_\_\_\_\_ a bad case of nerves. Recently, the voice was recorded and broadcast, so now everyone in Bavaria is looking \_\_\_\_\_\_ the ghost, but so far no one has succeeded \_\_\_\_\_\_ finding it. People who don't believe \_\_\_\_\_\_ ghosts think it is just a practical joke. The voice always shouts \_\_\_\_\_\_ the dentist, but speaks sweetly \_\_\_\_\_\_ his 17-year-old assistant, Claudia. But no one can blame Claudia \_\_\_\_\_\_ the behaviour of the ghost or accuse her \_\_\_\_\_\_ playing tricks \_\_\_\_\_\_ her poor boss. Engineers don't know what to make \_\_\_\_\_\_ it. 'He's a technical genius,' one of them said. The ghost has responded \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ all this activity by saying, in a thick Bavarian accent, 'You'll never get hold \_\_\_\_\_\_ me!'

## **3.2** Phrasal verbs: Type 2, verb + particle (transitive)

## 3.2 A Type 1 and Type 2 phrasal verbs compared

*1* We use prepositions after Type 1 verbs. We cannot separate the preposition from the verb: I'm looking at the camera. (Not "I'm looking the camera at. \*)

**2** We can separate the adverb particle from a Type 2 verb and put it immediately after the noun object: She gave away her books. She gave her books away.

3 If the object is a pronoun, we cannot put the particle in front of it:

Give *it* away. (*Not* 'Give away it. \*) Give *them* away. (*Not* 'Give away them. \*)

**4** Special note: In She gave away her books, away is an adverb particle, not a preposition, even if it has an object after it. Unlike a preposition, a particle is 'mobile' and can be used before or after a noun object.

#### 5. Use arrows to show which adverb particles you can move in these sentences.

- 1. I'm looking for my glasses.
- 2. I read about it in the papers.
- 3. Did you turn the gas off?
- 4. Yes, I've just turned it off.
- 5. Have you given the papers out?
- 6. Yes, I've given them out.

7. Write the information down here please.

- 8. A crowd emerged from the cinema.
- 9. Don't associate with him.
- 10. We've dealt with the problem.

## **3.2 B** Type 2: Particles that extend the verb: 'write down'

A single particle can strengthen or extend the meaning of a verb:

#### The scarecrow frightened the birds away, (away refers to 'distance')

*I* was holding my hat and the wind snatched it *away*, (away *refers to* 'detachment') c *I* got a cloth and wiped *away* the coffee I had spilled, (away *refers* to 'disappearance')

Please put these dishes away, (away refers to 'tidying')

The verb often has its non-idiomatic meaning, but the particle 'extends' this meaning: e.g. pull out, push away, wash away, move back, burn down, bring in, cut off.

#### 6. Match these meanings to the adverb particles in the sentences below.

a 'put on paper'	g 'permanence'	m 'to the ground' r 'up from the		
b 'exclusion'	h 'movement in'	n 'extension' surface'		
c 'addition'	i 'enclose'	o 'into pieces' s 'confine'		
d 'out of bed'	j 'clearly'	p 'distribution' t 'upwards direction'		
e 'completely'	5	q 'inwards'		
f 'movement out'		('destroy')		
out 1. drive the		<b>up</b> 11. pull that line $up$		
	word out	12. pick that $up$		
	stain <i>out</i>	13. fill this car $up$		
	our hand	14. chop that wood $up$		
5. copy this		15. let the patient $up$		
6. give these <i>out</i>		16. wrap this box $up$		
<b>in</b> 7. let him <i>in</i>		<b>down</b> 17. cut the tree <i>down</i>		
8. lock him		18. turn the heat <i>down</i>		
9. write this		19. close the shop down		
10. beat the		20. write this <i>down</i>		
	·			

## 3.2 C Type 2: Verb + particle + object, idiomatic: 'bring about a change'

We cannot relate the parts of these verbs to their literal meanings: e.g. *What brought about this change? What brought this change about? What brought it about?* (= caused to happen)

## 7. Match these verbs (1 - 15) with the explanations on the right (a - o) after you have tried to explain them in your own way.

- 1 When will they *bring* your article *out*? **e**
- 2 So she's *broken off* her engagement!
- 3 Don't *bring* that subject *up* again please! \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Why don't you *call up* your mother? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Shall I *do* your room *out*?
- 6 What excuse did he *cook up* this time? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 They're sure not to *find* him *out*.
- 8 You've given away the secret.
- 9 I can't *make out* what he means.

- a) get my revenge
- b) discuss your grievance
- c) fill
- d) give me accommodation
- e) publish
- f) invent
- g) destroy
- h) make him stop talking
- i) ended

- 10 If you're angry, *have it out* with her.
- 11 I'll pay you back for this! \_\_\_\_
- 12 Can you *put* me *up* for the night? \_\_\_\_\_
- 13 Shut him up! \_
- 14 The earthquake *wiped* the village *out*.
- 15 Why don't you *top up* the battery?

## 3.2 D Context

# 8. Look at the phrases in italics. Show with arrows which particles can be moved and where.

## NOT ONLY RED IN THE RACE!

Ken Rose is a company director and he has to sit at a desk all day. He likes to keep fit by running to work every morning. He *arrives at the office* early, *gets out of his shorts and vest* and *puts on a business suit*. Last week, Ken *got to his office* earlier than usual, dressed in red shorts and a red vest. He had just *put on his shirt and tie*, when the phone rang. Ken *picked up the receiver* and sat behind his desk. A business colleague *had called him up* early. Could he see Ken later? Could he *bring someone round*? Could they *check over some figures*? Could they *think of ways* of *cutting down expenses*? Could they *put off the meeting* till later in the week? Ken *was writing down some notes* when he noticed the time. It was after 9. 'Excuse me,' Ken said. 'I'll *call you back*.' He *had just put the receiver down* when someone *knocked at the door*. The Managing Director *came into the room* with six important guests. 'Ah, Ken,' he said, 'I want to *introduce you to our visitors* and I'd like you to *show them round the company*.' 'Of course, sir,' said Ken and he got up to shake hands, forgetting he still *had on his red shorts*!

## 3.3 Phrasal verbs: Type 3, verb + particle (intransitive) Type 4, verb + particle + preposition (transitive)

We use these verbs in their normal sense. Many combinations are possible: *Hurry up! Sit down! Stand up!* 

#### **3.3** A Type 3: Verb + particle, intransitive, non-idiomatic: 'hurry up' 9. Combine the following verbs with the following particles in different ways. come go hurry sit stand + along away down in up

come, go, narry, su, stand + along, away, down, in, up			
1	5	9	13
2	6	10	14
3	7	11	15
4	8	12	16

## **3.3 B** Type 3: Verb + particle, intransitive, idiomatic: 'break down'

We cannot relate the parts of these verbs to their literal meanings: e.g. *She broke down when she heard the news*. (= collapsed)

- j) clean
- k) reveal his dishonesty
- 1) mention
- m) revealed
- n) phone
- o) understand

## 10. Match these verbs (1 - 17) with the explanations on the right (a - q) after you have tried to explain them in your own way.

n	ave mea to explain them in your own way.		
1	All this information doesn't <i>add up</i> <b>b</b>	a)	be careful
2	I'm glad to say my plan <i>came off</i> .	b)	make sense
3	I need the money and you'd better <i>cough up</i> .	c)	improving
(ir	nformal)	d)	improving
4	You're tired. You should <i>ease off</i> .	e)	work less hard
5	When did the plane <i>take off</i> ?	f)	reveal the secret
6	Please don't <i>let on</i> I told you this.	g)	happen
7	I'm going to <i>lie in</i> tomorrow morning.	h)	succeeded
8	Is there sufficient food to go round?	i)	not working properly
9	Business is <i>looking up</i> .	j)	pay
10	You work and I'll <i>look on</i> .	k)	start your journey
11	My car's <i>playing up</i> again.	1)	arrived
12	l'Il be late, so don't <i>wait up</i> .	m)	leave the ground
13	<i>Mind out</i> ! He's turning left!	n)	not go to bed
14	I waited for him, but he never <i>showed up</i> .	0)	be enough
15	What time are you going to <i>set out</i> ?	p)	be a spectator
16	I'm glad to say business is <i>picking up</i> .	q)	stay in bed late
17	How did that <i>come about</i> ?		

## **3.3** C Type 4: Verb + particle + preposition + object, non-idiomatic: 'walk up to the top'

These verbs are used in their normal sense.

#### 11. Write sentences with the following.

- 1 (come down from) <u>The lift takes a long time to come down from the top floor.</u>
- 2 (drive on to) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 (hurry over to) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 (run along to) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 (stay away from)

#### 3.3 D Verb + particle + preposition + object, idiomatic: 'put up with it'

We cannot relate the parts of these verbs to their literal meanings: e.g. *How do you put up with it*? (= tolerate)

## 12. Match these verbs (1 - 20) with the explanations on the right (a - t) after you have tried to explain them in your own way.

- 1 Your argument *boils down to* this. **e**
- 2 I can't *go back on* my word.
- 3 Please *let* me *in on* the secret.
- 4 You'd better *talk* him *out of* his plan.
- 5 Some of his good luck has *rubbed off on* me. \_\_\_\_\_
- a) use
- b) allow me to share
- c) expecting to enjoy
- d) contact
  - e) can be summarized as

- 6 I can't *live up to* my reputation.
- 7 I've *set up in* business.
- 8 This *ties in* nicely *with* my plan.
- 9 Who *put* you *up to* this? \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 I don't *feel up to* this party.
- 11 This won't *make up for* the damage.
- 12 You've got to *face up to* reality.
- 13 The Cabots *look down on* us.
- 14 We've had to *fall back on* our savings.
- 15 I think it would be a good idea to *keep in with* her.
- 16 I'll get on to them immediately.
- 17 The bill comes out at \$ 100 exactly.
- 18 If you're angry, you don't have to *take* it *out on* me.

19 I'm glad they've *done away with* that bad law.

20 I'm looking forward to holidays.

## 3.3 E Context

- f) totals
- g) started
- h) treat unfairly
- i) benefited
- j) accept with courage
- k) fits
- 1) fail to honour
- m) abolished
- n) maintain the high standard
- o) consider us inferior
- p) compensate for
- q) gave you this idea
- r) stay on good terms
- s) feel well enough for
- t) persuade not to do

## **13.** Put in *about, down, down on, in, in on, up, up on, up to, up with or to.* A CURE FOR SNORING

It's very difficult for people who sleep silently to put \_\_\_\_\_ the sound of snoring. Some people are asleep the moment they lie \_\_\_\_\_; others stay \_\_\_\_\_ half the night waiting for the miracle of sleep to come \_\_\_\_\_. Even insomniacs snore. Insomniacs are the ones who need to lie \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning to catch \_\_\_\_\_ lost sleep. Snorers will never admit to snoring. They know the rest of the world looks \_\_\_\_\_ them and they just can't face \_\_\_\_\_ reality. My friend, Henry, a champion snore, has just found a cure and he let me \_\_\_\_\_ his little secret. He has just coughed \_\_\_\_\_ good money for a band with a stud on it. He wears the band round his head at night and if he tries to sleep on his back, the stud gives him a jab. I'm sure this news will cheer \_\_\_\_\_ all snorers, who now have a new experience to look forward \_\_\_\_\_. With one of these on their heads, all they have to lose is their sleep!

#### Література / References

- 1. Верба Л. Г. Довідник з граматики англійської мови. Київ : Освіта. 1995.
- 2. Матюшкина Герке. Англійська мова для філологічного факультету університету. 1990.
- 3. Клементьева Т. И. Повторяем времена английского глагола. Київ : Освіта. 1996.
- 4. Качалова К., Израилевич Е. Е. Практична граматика англійської мови 2-ух т. Киев, 1995.
- 5. Гужва Т., Кодалашвили О. Английский язык для чтения и аудирования. Упражнения по грамматике, ч. I, II. – Київ : Тандем, 2000.
- 6. Кобрина И. А. Грамматика современного английского языка. М. : Просвещение, 1986.
- 7. Кобрина И. А. Грамматика современного английского языка, Морфология. Синтаксис. СПб : Союз, Лениздат, 2000
- 8. Крылова И. П. Грамматика современного английского языка. М. : Просвещение, 2000.
- 9. Натанзон Е. А. Косвенные наклонения и модальные глаголы в английском языке. М. : Международные отношения, 1968.
- 10. Черноватий Л. М., Калабан В. І. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами: Посібник для студентів вищих закладів освіти. Вінниця : Нова книга, 2006/
- 11. L. Alexander. Longman English Grammar Practice. Longman, 2002
- 12. V. Evans. Grammarway. Express Publishing, 2010
- 13. V. Evans. Round up. English Grammar Practice. Longman, 200
- 14. R. Murphy. Essential Grammar in Use, Oxford University Press, 1984.
- 15. Y. A. Krutikov. Exercises in Modern English Grammar, 1964.
- 16. TOEFL Пособие по подготовке к екзаменам по а. м. В 2-ух книгах.
- 17. Hornby "Oxford Progressive English for Adult Learners".

Навчальне видання

Остапенко Світлана Анатоліївна

Кафедра іноземної філології та перекладу

## МЕТОДИЧНІ РЕКОМЕНДАЦІЇ З ВИВЧЕННЯ ДИСЦИПЛІНИ

## ПРАКТИЧНИЙ КУРС ОСНОВНОЇ ІНОЗЕМНОЇ МОВИ (ПРАКТИЧНА ГРАМАТИКА)

Формат 60×84/8. Ум. др. арк. 8

Донецький національний університет економіки і торгівлі імені Михайла Туган-Барановського 50005, Дніпропетровська обл., м. Кривий Ріг, вул. Трамвайна, 16. Свідоцтво суб'єкта видавничої справи ДК № 4929 від 07.07.2015 р.